



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

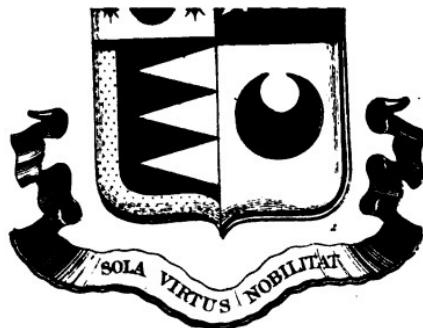
### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

HN 4QKE I

KF 25106

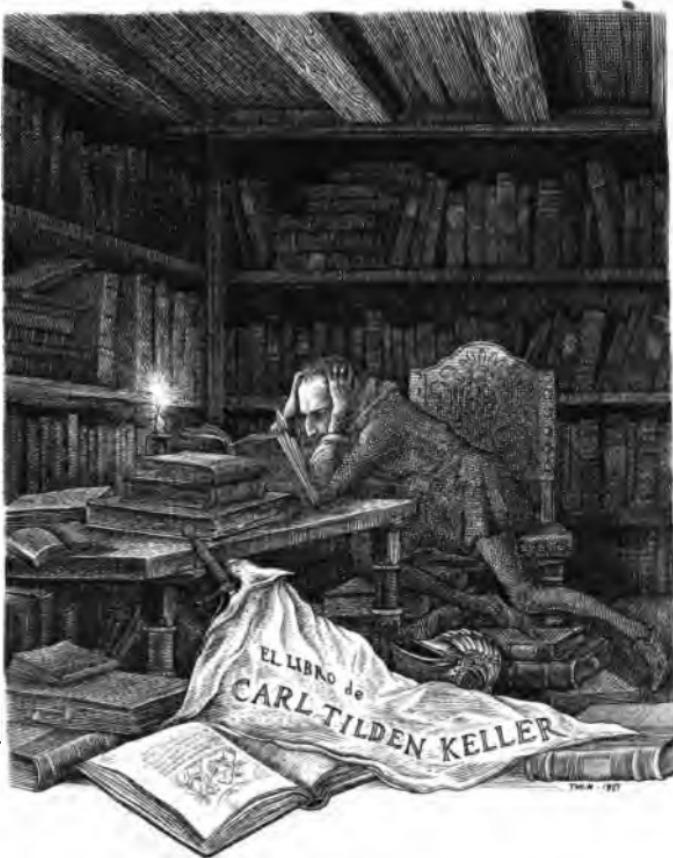
FROM  
THE DON QUIXOTE  
COLLECTION GIVEN  
TO THE  
HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY BY  
*CARL T. KELLER, '94*



WILLIAM HENDERSON.

Ex Libris

Edwin Clark Jones.





---

THE  
**HISTORY**  
OF  
**DON QUIXOTE.**

---



THE  
**HISTORY**  
OF  
THE INGENIOUS GENTLEMAN,  
**DON QUIXOTE**  
OF  
**LA MANCHA;**  
TRANSLATED FROM THE SPANISH,  
BY MOTTEUX.

A NEW EDITION,  
WITH  
COPIOUS NOTES;  
AND  
AN ESSAY ON THE LIFE AND WRITINGS  
OF  
CERVANTES.

IN FIVE VOLUMES.

VOL. II.

EDINBURGH :

PRINTED FOR HURST, ROBINSON, AND CO. LONDON ;  
AND ARCHIBALD CONSTABLE AND CO.,  
EDINBURGH.

1822.

KF 25106



Printed by James Ballantyne and Co., Edinburgh.

## CONTENTS

OF

## VOLUME SECOND.

---

### PART I.—BOOK III.—CONTINUED.

#### CHAPTER XI.

PAGE.

- Of the strange Things that happened to the valiant  
Knight of La Mancha in the Black Mogntain ; and of  
the Penance he did there, in imitation of Beltenebros,  
or the Lovely Obscure . . . . . 1

#### CHAPTER XII.

- A Continuation of the refined Extravaganeies by which  
the gallant Knight of La Mancha chose to express his  
love in the Sierra Morena . . . . . 28

#### CHAPTER XIII.

- How the Curate and Barber put their Design in execu-  
tion ; with other Things worthy to be recorded in this  
important History . . . . . 39
- 

### PART I.—BOOK IV.

#### CHAPTER I.

- The pleasant new Adventure the Curate and Barber met  
with in Sierra Morena, or Black Mountain . . . . . 63

	PAGE.
<b>CHAPTER II</b>	
An Account of the beautiful Dorothea's Discretion, with other pleasant Passages . . . . .	83
<b>CHAPTER III.</b>	
The pleasant Stratagems used to free the enamoured Knight from the rigorous Penance which he had un- dertaken . . . . .	100
<b>CHAPTER IV.</b>	
The pleasant Dialogue between Don Quixote and his Squire continued, with other Adventures . . . . .	116
<b>CHAPTER V.</b>	
What befel Don Quixote and his Company at the Inn, . . . . .	129
<b>CHAPTER VI.</b>	
The Novel of the Curious Impertinent . . . . .	138
<b>CHAPTER VII.</b>	
In which the History of the Curious Impertinent is pur- sued . . . . .	163
<b>CHAPTER VIII.</b>	
The Conclusion of the Novel of the Curious Imperti- nent ; with the dreadful Battle betwixt Don Quixote and certain Wine-Skins . . . . .	190
<b>CHAPTER IX.</b>	
Containing an Account of many surprising Accidents in the Inn . . . . .	201
<b>CHAPTER X.</b>	
The History of the famous Princess Micomicoma conti- nued, with other pleasant Adventures . . . . .	213

## CONTENTS.

vii

	PAGE.
<b>CHAPTER XI.</b>	
A Continuation of Don Quixote's curious Discourse upon Arms and Learning . . . . .	227
<b>CHAPTER XII.</b>	
Where the Captive relates his Life and Adventures .	233
<b>CHAPTER XIII.</b>	
The Story of the Captive continued . . . . .	244
<b>CHAPTER XIV.</b>	
The Adventures of the Captive continued . . . . .	261
<b>NOTES . . . . .</b>	287



THE  
LIFE  
AND  
ACHIEVEMENTS  
OF THE RENOWNED  
DON QUIXOTE DE LA MANCHA.

---

PART I. BOOK III.—CONTINUED.

---

CHAPTER XI.

*Of the strange things that happened to the valiant Knight of La Mancha in the Black Mountain ; and of the penance he did there, in imitation of Beltenebros, or the Lovely Obscure.*

DON QUIXOTE took leave of the goat-herd, and having mounted Rozinante, commanded Sancho to follow him, which he did, but with no very good will, his master leading him into the roughest and most craggy part of the mountain. Thus they travelled for a while without speaking a word to each other. Sancho, almost dead, and ready to burst for want of a little chat, waited with great impatience till his master should begin, not daring to speak

first, since his strict injunction of silence. But at last, not being able to keep his word any longer, “ Good your worship,” quoth he, “ give me your blessing and leave to be gone, I beseech you, that I may go home to my wife and children, where I may talk till I am weary, and nobody can hinder me ; for I must needs tell you, that for you to think to lead me a jaunt through hedge and ditch, over hills and dales, by night and by day, without daring to open my lips, is to bury me alive. Could beasts speak, as they did in *Æsop's* time, it would not have been half so bad with me ; for then might I have communed with my ass as I pleased, and have forgot my ill fortune : but to trot on in this fashion, all the days of my life, after adventures, and to light of nothing but thumps, kicks, and cuffs, and be tossed in a blanket, and after all, forsooth, to have a man's mouth sewed up, without daring to speak one's mind,—I say it again, no living soul can endure it.”

“ I understand thee, Sancho,” answered Don Quixote, “ thou lingerest with impatience to exercise thy talking faculty. Well, I am willing to free thy tongue from this restraint that so cruelly pains thee, upon condition, that the time of this licence shall not extend beyond that of our continuance in these mountains.”—“ A match,” quoth Sancho, “ let us make hay while the sun shines, I will talk whilst I may ; what I may do hereafter heaven knows best !” And so beginning to take the benefit of his privilege, “ Pray, sir,” quoth he, “ what occasion had you to take so hotly the part of Queen Magimasa, or what do you call her ? What

the devil was it to you, whether that same Master Abbot\* were her friend in a corner, or no ? had you taken no notice of what was said, as you might well have done, seeing it was no business of yours, the madman would have gone on with his story, you had missed a good thump on the breast, and I had escaped some five or six good dowses on the chaps, besides the trampling of my puddings."—" Upon my honour, friend Sancho," replied Don Quixote, " didst thou but know, as well as I do, what a virtuous and eminent lady Queen Madasima was, thou wouldest say I had a great deal of patience, seeing I did not strike that profane wretch on the mouth, out of which such blasphemies proceeded : for, in short, it was the highest piece of detraction to say, that a queen was scandalously familiar with a barber-surgeon : for the truth of the story is, that this Master Elisabat, of whom the madman spoke, was a person of extraordinary prudence and sagacity, and physician to that queen, who also made use of his advice in matters of importance; but to say she gave him up her honour, and prostituted herself to the embraces of a man of such an inferior degree, was an impudent, groundless, and slanderous accusation, worthy of the severest punishment ; neither can I believe that Cardenio knew what he said, when he charged the queen with that debasing guilt ; for, it is plain, that his raving fit had disordered the seat of his understanding."—" Why, there it is," quoth Sancho ; " who but a madman would have minded

---

\* Sancho, remembering only the latter part of Master Elisabat's name, pleasantly calls him Abad, which is Spanish for an Abbot.

what a madman said ? What if the flint that hit you on the breast had dashed out your brains ? we had been in a dainty pickle for taking the part of that same lady, with a pease-cod in her. Nay, and Cardenio would have come off too, had he knocked you on the head ; for the law has nothing to do with madmen."—"Sancho," replied Don Quixote, "we knights-errant are obliged to vindicate the honour of women of what quality soever, as well against madmen, as against men in their senses ; much more queens of that magnitude and extraordinary worth, as Queen Madasima, for whose rare endowments I have a peculiar veneration ; for she was a most beautiful lady, discreet and prudent to admiration, and behaved herself with an exemplary patience in all her misfortunes. It was then that the company and wholesome counsels of Master Elisabat proved very useful to alleviate the burden of her afflictions : from which the ignorant and ill-meaning vulgar took occasion to suspect and rumour, that she was guilty of an unlawful commerce with him. But I say once more, they lie, and lie a thousand times, whoever they be, that shall presumptuously report, or hint, or so much as think or surmise so base a calumny."

"Why," quoth Sancho, "I neither say, nor think one way nor the t'other, not I : let them that say it, eat the lie, and swallow it with their bread. If they lay together, they have answered for it before now. I never thrust my nose into other mens' porridge. It is no bread and butter of mine : every man for himself, and God for us all, say I ; for he that buys and lies, finds it in his purse. Let him that owns the cow, take her by the tail. Naked

came I into the world, and naked must I go out. Many think to find flitches of bacon, and find not so much as the racks to lay them on : but who can hedge in a cuckow ? Little said is soon mended. It is a sin to belie the devil : but misunderstanding brings lies to town, and there is no padlocking or people's mouths ; for a close mouth catches no flies."

" Bless me !" cried Don Quixote, " what a catalogue of musty proverbs hast thou run through ! what a heap of frippery ware hast thou threaded together, and how wide from the purpose ! Pray thee have done, and for the future let thy whole study be to spur thy ass ; nor do thou concern thyself with things that are out of thy sphere ; and with all thy five senses remember this, that whatsoever I do, have done, and shall do, is no more than what is the result of mature consideration, and strictly conformable to the laws of chivalry, which I understand better than all the knights that ever professed knight-errantry."—" Ay, ay, sir," quoth Sancho ; " but pray, is it a good law of chivalry that says we shall wander up and down, over bushes and briars, in this rocky wilderness, where there is neither foot-path nor horse-way ; running after a madman, who, if we may light on him again, may chance to make an end of what he has begun, not of his tale of a roasted horse, I mean, but of belabouring you and me thoroughly, and squeezing out my guts at both ends ?"—" Once more, I pr'ythee, have done," said Don Quixote : " I have business of greater moment than the finding this frantic man ; it is not so much that business that detains me in this barren and desolate wild, as a desire I have to perform a certain

heroic deed that shall immortalize my fame, and make it fly to the remotest regions of the habitable globe; nay, it shall seal and confirm the most complete and absolute knight-errant in the world."—"But is not this same adventure very dangerous?" asked Sancho.—"Not at all," replied Don Quixote, "though, as fortune may order it, our expectations may be baffled by disappointing accidents: but the main thing consists in thy diligence."—"My diligence?" quoth Sancho.—"I mean," said Don Quixote, "that if thou returnest with all the speed imaginable from the place whither I design to send thee, my pain will soon be at an end, and my glory begin. And because I do not doubt thy zeal for advancing thy master's interest, I will no longer conceal my design from thee. Know, then, my most faithful squire, that Amadis de Gaul was one of the most accomplished knights-errant; nay, I should not have said he was one of them, but the most perfect, the chief, and prince of them all. And let not the Belianises, nor any others, pretend to stand in competition with him for the honour of priority; for, to my knowledge, should they attempt it, they would be egregiously in the wrong. I must also inform thee, that when a painter studies to excel and grow famous in his art, he takes care to imitate the best originals; which rule ought likewise to be observed in all other arts and sciences that serve for the ornament of well-regulated commonwealths. Thus he that is ambitious of gaining the reputation of a prudent and patient man, ought to propose to himself to imitate Ulysses, in whose person and troubles Homer has admirably delineated

ted a perfect pattern and prototype of wisdom and heroic patience. So Virgil, in his *Aeneas*, has given the world a rare example of filial piety, and of the sagacity of a valiant and experienced general; both the Greek and Roman poets representing their heroes not such as they really were, but such as they should be, to remain examples of virtue to ensuing ages. In the same manner, Amadis having been the polar star and sun of valorous and amorous knights, it is him we ought to set before our eyes as our great exemplar, all of us that fight under the banner of love and chivalry; for it is certain that the adventurer who shall emulate him best, shall consequently arrive nearest to the perfection of knight-errantry. Now, Sancho, I find that among the things which most displayed that champion's prudence and fortitude, his constancy and love, and his other heroic virtues, none was more remarkable than his retiring from his disdainful Oriana, to do penance on the Poor Rock, changing his name into that of Beltenebros, or the Lovely Obscure, a title certainly most significant, and adapted to the life which he then intended to lead. So I am resolved to imitate him in this, the rather because I think it a more easy task than it would be to copy after his other achievements, such as cleaving the bodies of giants, cutting off the heads of dragons, killing dreadful monsters, routing whole armies, dispersing navies, breaking the force of magic spells. And since these mountainous wilds offer me so fair an opportunity, I see no reason why I should neglect it, and therefore I will lay hold on it now."—"Very

well," quoth Sancho; "but pray, sir, what is it that you mean to do in this fag-end of the world?"—"Have I not already told thee," answered Don Quixote, "that I intend to copy Amadis in his madness, despair, and fury? nay, at the same time I will imitate the valiant Orlando Furioso's extravagance, when he ran mad, after he had found the unhappy tokens of the fair Angelica's dishonourable commerce with Medoro at the fountain; at which time, in his frantic despair, he tore up trees by the roots, troubled the waters of the clear fountains, slew the shepherds, destroyed their flocks, fired their huts, demolished houses, drove their horses before him, and committed a hundred thousand other extravagances, worthy to be recorded in the eternal register of fame. Not that I intend, however, in all things to imitate Roldan, or Orlando, or Rotoland, (for he had all those names) but only to make choice of such frantic effects of his amorous despair, as I shall think most essential and worthy imitation. Nay, perhaps I shall wholly follow Amadis, who, without launching out into such destructive and fatal ravings, and only expressing his anguish in complaints and lamentations, gained nevertheless a renown equal, if not superior, to that of the greatest heroes."

"Sir," quoth Sancho, "I dare say the knights who did these penances had some reason to be mad; but what need have you to be mad too? what lady has sent you a packing, or so much as slighted you? when did you ever find that my Lady Dulcinea del Toboso did otherwise than

she should do, with either Moor \* or Christian?" — "Why, there is the point," cried Don Quixote "in this consists the singular perfection of my undertaking; for, mark me, Sancho, for a knight-errant to run mad upon any just occasion, is neither strange nor meritorious; no, the rarity is to run mad without a cause, without the least constraint or necessity: there is a refined and exquisite passion for you, Sancho! for thus my mistress must needs have a vast idea of my love, since she may guess what I should perform in the wet, if I do so much in the dry. But besides, I have but too just a motive to give a loose to my raving grief, considering the long date of my absence from my ever supreme lady, Dulcinea del Toboso; for as the shepherd in Matthias Ambrosio has it,

Poor lovers, absent from the darling fair,  
All ills not only dread, but bear.

Then do not lavish any more time in striving to divert me from so rare, so happy, and so singular an imitation. I am mad, and will be mad, until thy return with an answer to the letter which thou must carry from me to the Lady Dulcinea; and if it be as favourable as my unshaken constancy deserves, then my madness and my penance shall end; but if I find she repays my vows and services with ungrateful disdain, then will I be emphatically mad, and screw up my thoughts to such an excess of distraction, that I shall be insensible of the rigour of my relentless fair. Thus what return soever she

\* Sancho says Moor for Medoro.

makes to my passion, I shall be eased one way or other of the anxious thoughts that now divide my soul ; either entertaining the welcome news of her reviving pity with demonstrations of sense, or else shewing my insensibility of her cruelty by the height of my distraction. But in the mean time, Sancho, tell me, hast thou carefully preserved Mambrino's helmet ? I saw thee take it up the other day, after that monster of ingratitude had spent his rage in vain endeavours to break it ; which, by the way, argues the most excellent temper of the metal."—"Body of me," quoth Sancho, "Sir Knight of the Woe-ful Figure, I can no longer bear to hear you run on at this rate ! Why, this were enough to make any man believe that all your bragging and bouncing of your knight-errantry, your winning of kingdoms, and bestowing of islands, and heaven knows what, upon your squire, are mere flim-flam stories, and nothing but shams and lies ; for who the devil can hear a man call a barber's basin a helmet, nay, and stand to it, and vouch it four days together, and not think him that says it to be stark mad, or without brains ? I have the basin safe enough here in my pouch, and I'll get it mended for my own use, if ever I have the luck to get home to my wife and children."

" Now as I love bright arms," cried Don Quixote, " I swear thou art the shallowest, silliest, and most stupid fellow of a squire that ever I heard or read of in my life ! How is it possible for thee to be so dull of apprehension, as not to have learnt in all this time that thou hast been in my service, that all the actions and adventures of us knights-er-

rant seem to be mere chimeras, follies, and impertinencies? Not that they are so indeed, but either through the officious care, or else through the malice and envy of those enchanters that always haunt and persecute us unseen, and by their fascinations change the appearance of our actions into what they please, according to their love or hate. This is the very reason why that which I plainly perceive to be Mambrino's helmet, seems to thee to be only a barber's basin, and perhaps another man may take it to be something else. And in this I can never too much admire the prudence of the sage who espouses my interests, in making that inestimable helmet seem a basin; for did it appear in its proper shape, its tempting value would raise me as many enemies as there are men in the universe, all eager to snatch from me so desirable a prize: but so long as it shall seem to be nothing else but a barber's basin, men will not value it; as is manifest from the fellow's leaving it behind him on the ground; for had he known what it really was, he would sooner have parted with his life. Keep it safe then, Sancho, for I have no need of it at present, far from it; I think to put off my armour, and strip myself as naked as I came out of my mother's womb, in case I determine to imitate Orlando's fury, rather than the penance of Amadis."

This discourse brought them to the foot of a high rock that stood by itself, as if it had been hewn out, and divided from the rest; by the skirt of it glided a purling stream, that softly took its winding course through an adjacent meadow. The verdant fresh-

ness of the grass, the number of wild trees, plants, and flowers, that feasted the eyes in that pleasant solitude, invited the Knight of the Woeful Figure to make choice of it to perform his amorous penance ; and therefore as soon as he had let his ravished sight rove a while over the scattered beauties of the place, he took possession of it with the following speech, as if he utterly lost the small share of reason he had left : “ Behold, O heavens !” cried he, “ the place which an unhappy lover has chosen to bemoan the deplorable state to which you have reduced him : here shall my flowing tears swell the liquid veins of this crystal rill, and my deep sighs perpetually move the leaves of these shady trees, in testimony of the anguish and pain that harrows up my soul. Ye rural deities, whoever you be, that make these unfrequented deserts your abode, hear the complaints of an unfortunate lover, whom a tedious absence, and some slight impressions of a jealous mistrust, have driven to these regions of despair, to bewail his rigorous destiny, and deplore the distracting cruelty of that ungrateful fair, who is the perfection of all human beauty. Ye pitying Napaean Nymphs and Dryades, silent inhabitants of the woods and groves, assist me to lament my fate, or at least attend the mournful story of my woes ; so may no designing beastly satyrs, those just objects of your hate, ever have power to interrupt your rest. O Dulcinea del Toboso ! thou sun that turnest my gloomy night to day ! glory of my pain ! north star of my travels, and reigning planet that controull’st my heart ! pity, I conjure thee, the unparalleled distress to which

thy absence has reduced the faithfulest of lovers, and grant to my fidelity that kind return which it so justly claims ! so may indulgent fate shower on thee all the blessings thou ever canst desire, or heavens grant!—Yel lonesome trees, under whose spreading branches I come to linger out the gloomy shadow of a tedious being ; let the soft language of your rustling leaves, and the kind nodding of your springing boughs, satisfy me that I am welcome to your shady harbours.—O thou, my trusty squire, the inseparable companion of my adventures, diligently observe what thou shalt see me do in this lonely retreat, that thou mayest inform the dear cause of my ruin with every particular.” As he said this, he alighted, and presently taking off his horse’s bridle and saddle, “ Go, Rozinante,” saith he, giving the horse a clap on the posteriors, “ he that has lost his freedom gives thee thine, thou steed as renowned for thy extraordinary actions, as for thy misfortunes ; go rear thy awful front wherever thou pleasest, secure that neither the Hyppogryphon of Astolpho, nor the renowned Frontino, which Bradamante purchased at so high a price, could ever be thought thy equals.”

“ Well fare him,” cried Sancho, “ that saved me the trouble of sending my ass to grass too : poor thing, had I him here, he should not want two or three claps on the buttocks, nor a fine speech in his praise neither, while I took off his pannel. But stay, were he here, what need would there be to strip him of his harness ? Alas, he never had any thing to do with these mad pranks of love, no

more than myself, who was his master when fortune pleased. But do you hear me, now I think on it, Sir Knight of the Woeful Figure, if your worship is resolved to be mad, and send me away in good earnest, we must even clap the saddle again on Rozinante's back ; for to tell you the truth, I am but a sorry foot-man, and if I do not ride home, I do not know when I shall be able to come back again."—"Do as thou thinkest fit for that, Sancho," answered Don Quixote, "for I design thou shalt set forward about three days hence. In the mean while, thou shalt be a witness of what I will do for my lady's sake, that thou mayest give her an account of it."—"Bless my eye-sight," quoth Sancho, "what can I see more than I have seen already?"—"Thou hast seen nothing yet," answered Don Quixote ; "thou must see me throw away my armour, tear my clothes, knock my head against the rocks, and do a thousand other things of that kind, that will fill thee with astonishment."—"For goodness sake, sir," quoth Sancho, "take heed how you quarrel with those ungracious rocks ; you may chance to get such a crack on the crown at the very first rap, as may spoil your penance at one dash. No, I do not like that way by no means ; if you must needs be knocking your noddle, to go through stitch with this ugly job, seeing it is all but a mockery, or as it were between jest and earnest, why cannot you as well play your tricks on something that is softer than these unconscionable stones ? You may run your head against water, or rather against cotton, or this stuffing of Rozinante's saddle, and then let me alone with the rest : I

will be sure to tell my Lady Dulcinea, that you be-bumped your pole against the point of a rock that is harder than a diamond."

"I thank thee for thy good-will, dear Sancho," replied Don Quixote; "but I assure thee, that all these seeming extravagancies that I must run through, are no jests: far from it, they must all be performed seriously and solemnly; for otherwise we should transgress the laws of chivalry, that forbid us to tell lies upon pain of degradation; now to pretend to do one thing, and effect another, is an evasion, which I esteem to be as bad as lying. Therefore the blows which I must give myself on the head, ought to be real, substantial, sound ones, without any trick, or mental reservation; for which reason I would have thee leave me some lint and salve, since fortune has deprived us of the sovereign balsam which we lost."—"It was a worse loss to lose the ass," quoth Sancho, "for with him we have lost bag and baggage, lint and all: but no more of your damned drench, if you love me; the very thoughts on it are enough not only to turn my stomach, but my soul; such a rumbling I feel in my wame at the name of it. Then as for the three days you would have me loiter here to mind your mad tricks, you had as good make account they are already over; for I hold them for done, unsight unseen, and will tell wonders to my lady: wherefore write you your letter, and send me going with all haste; for let me be hanged if I do not long already to be back, to take you out of this purgatory wherein I leave you."

"Dost thou only call it purgatory, Sancho?" cried Don Quixote; "call it hell rather, or something worse, if there be in nature a term expressive of a more wretched state."—"Nay, not so neither," quoth Sancho, "I would not call it hell; because, as I heard our parson say, 'There is no retention \* out of hell.'"—"Retention!" cried Don Quixote; "what dost thou mean by that word?"—"Why," quoth Sancho, "retention is retention; it is, that whosoever is in hell, never comes, nor can come, out of it: which shall not be your case this bout, if I can stir my heels, and have but spurs to tickle Rosinante's flanks, till I come to my Lady Dulcinea; for I will tell her such strange things of your maggoty tricks, your folly and your madness, for indeed they are no better, that I will lay my head to a hazle-nut, I will make her as supple as a glove, though I found her at first as tough-hearted as a cork; and when I have wheedled an answer out of her, all full of sweet honey words, away will I whisk it back to you, cutting the air as swift as a witch upon a broomstick, and free you out of your purgatory; for a purgatory I will have it to be in spite of hell, nor shall you gainsay me in that fancy; for, as I have told you before, there are some hopes of your retention out of this place."

"Well, be it so," said the Knight of the Woeful Figure: "but how shall I do to write this letter?"—"And the order for the three asses?" added San-

---

\* No redemption he means.

cho.—“ I will not forget it,” answered Don Quixote ; “ but since we have here no paper, I must be obliged to write on the leaves or bark of trees, or on wax, as they did in ancient times ; yet now I consider on it, we are here as ill provided with wax as with paper : but stay, now I remember, I have Cardenio’s pocket-book, which will supply that want in this exigence, and then thou shalt get the letter fairly transcribed at the first village where thou canst meet with a school-master ; or, for want of a school-master, thou mayest get the clerk of the parish to do it ; but by no means give it to any notary or scrivener to be written out ; for they commonly write such confounded hands, that the devil himself would scarce be able to read it.”—“ Well,” quoth Sancho, “ but what shall I do for want of your name to it ?” —“ Why,” answered Don Quixote, “ Amadis never used to subscribe his letters.”—“ Ay,” replied Sancho, “ but the bill of exchange for the three asses must be signed ; for should I get it copied out afterwards, they would say it is not your hand, and so I shall go without the asses.”—“ I will write and sign the order for them in the table-book,” answered Don Quixote ; “ and as soon as my niece sees the hand, she will never scruple the delivery of the asses : and as for the love-letter, when thou gettest it transcribed, thou must get it thus under-written, ‘Yours till death, the Knight of the Woeful Figure.’ It is no matter whether the letter and subscription be written by the same hand or no ; for, as I remember, Dulcinea can neither read nor write, nor did she ever see any of my letters, nay, not so much

as any of my writing in her life : for my love and her's have always been purely Platonic, never extending beyond the lawful bounds of a modest look ; and that too so very seldom, that I dare safely swear, that though for these twelve years she has been dearer to my soul than light to my eyes, yet I never saw her four times in my life ; and perhaps of those few times that I have seen her, she has scarce perceived once that I beheld her ; so strictly, and so discreetly, Lorenzo Corchuelo her father, and Aldonza Nogales her mother, have kept and educated her."—"Heighday !" quoth Sancho ; " did you ever hear the like ? and is my Lady Dulcinea del Toboso, at last the daughter of Lorenzo Corchuelo, she that is otherwise called Aldonza Lorenzo ?"—" The same," answered Don Quixote ; " and it is she that merits to be the sovereign mistress of the universe."—" Udsniggers," quoth Sancho, " I know her full well ; it is a strapping wench, i'faith, and pitches the bar with e'er a lusty young fellow in our parish. By the mass, it is a notable, strong-built, sizable, sturdy, manly lass, and one that will keep her chin out of the mire, I warrant her ; nay, and hold the best knight-errant to it that wears a head, if ever he venture upon her. Body of me, what a pair of lungs and a voice she has, when she sets up her throat ! I saw her one day perch'd up o' top of our steeple to call some ploughmen that were at work in a fallow-field : and though they were half a league off, they heard her as plain as if they had been in the church-yard under her. The best of her is, that she is neither coy nor

frumpish ; she is a tractable lass, and fit for a courter, for she will play with you like a kitten, and jibes and jokes at every body. And now, in good truth, Sir Knight of the Woeful Figure, you may e'en play at your gambols as you please ; you may run mad, you may hang yourself for her sake ; there is nobody but will say you e'en took the wisest course, though the devil himself should carry you away a pick-apack. Now am I even wild to be gone, though it were for nothing else but to see her, for I have not seen her this many a day : I fancy I shall hardly know her again, for a woman's face strangely alters by her being always in the sun, and drudging and moiling in the open fields. Well, I must needs own I have been mightily mistaken all along : for I durst have sworn this Lady Dulcinea had been some great princess with whom you were in love, and such a one as deserved those rare gifts you bestowed on her, as the Biscayan, the galley-slaves, and many others, that, for aught I know, you may have sent her before I was your squire. I cannot chuse but laugh to think how my Lady Aldonza Lorenzo (my Lady Dulcinea del Toboso, I should have said) would behave herself, should any of those men which you have sent, or may send to her, chance to go and fall down on their marrow-bones before her : for it is ten to one they may happen to find her a carding of flax, or threshing in the barn, and then how finely baulked they will be ! as sure as I am alive, they must needs think the devil owed them a shame ; and she herself will but flout them, and mayhap be somewhat nettled at it."

"I have often told thee, Sancho," said Don Quixote, "and I tell thee again, that thou oughtest to bridle or immure thy saucy prating tongue; for though thou art but a dull-headed dunce, yet now and then thy ill-mannered jests bite too sharp. But that I may at once make thee sensible of thy folly and my discretion, I will tell thee a short story. A handsome, brisk, young, rich widow, and withal no prude, happened to fall in love with a well-set, lusty \* Lay-Brother. His Superior hearing of it, took occasion to go to her, and said to her, by way of charitable admonition, 'I mightily wonder, madam, how a lady of your merit, so admired for beauty and for sense, and withal so rich, could make so ill a choice, and doat on a mean, silly, despicable fellow, as I hear you do, while we have in our house so many masters of art, bachelors, and doctors of divinity, among whom your ladyship may pick and chuse, as you would among pears, and say, 'This I like, and that I do not like.' But she soon answered the officious grave gentleman: 'Sir,' said she, with a smile, 'you are much mistaken, and think altogether after the old out-of-fashion way, if you imagine I have made so ill a choice; for though you fancy the man is a fool, yet as to what I take him for, he knows as much, or rather more philosophy, than Aristotle himself.' So, Sancho, as to the use which I make of the Lady Dulcinea, she is equal to

\* Motillon, a lay-brother, or servant in the convent or college, so called from Motila, a cropped head; his hair being cropped short, he has no crown like those in orders.

the greatest princess in the world. Pr'ythee tell me, dost thou think the poets, who, every one of them, celebrate the praises of some lady or other, had all real mistresses ? or that the Amaryllis's, the Phyllis's, the Sylvia's, the Diana's, the Galatea's, the Alida's, and the like, which you shall find in so many poems, romances, songs and ballads, upon every stage, and even in every barber's shop, were creatures of flesh and blood, and mistresses to those that did, and do celebrate them ? No, no, never think it ; for I dare assure thee, the greatest part of them were nothing but the mere imaginations of the poets, for a ground-work to exercise their wits upon, and give to the world occasion to look on the authors as men of an amorous and gallant disposition : and so it is sufficient for me to imagine, that Aldonza Lorenzo is beautiful and chaste ; as for her birth and parentage, they concern me but little ; for there is no need to make an enquiry about a woman's pedigree, as there is of us men, when some badge of honour is bestowed on us ; and so she is to me the greatest princess in the world : for thou oughtest to know, Sancho, if thou knowest it not already, that there are but two things that chiefly excite us to love a woman,—an attractive beauty, and unspotted fame. Now these two endowments are happily reconciled in Dulcinea ; for as for the one, she has not her equal, and few can vie with her in the other : but to cut off all objections at once, I imagine, that all I say of her is really so, without the least addition or diminution : I fancy her to be just such as I would have her for beauty and quality. Helen

cannot stand in competition with her ; Lucretia cannot rival her ; and all the heroines which antiquity has to boast, whether Greeks, Romans, or Barbarians, are at once out-done by her incomparable perfections. Therefore let the world say what it will ; should the ignorant vulgar foolishly censure me, I please myself with the assurances I have of the approbation of men of the strictest morals, and the nicest judgment."—"Sir," quoth Sancho, "I knock under : you have reason on your side in all you say, and I own myself an ass. Nay, I am an ass to talk of an ass ; for it is ill talking of halters in the house of a man that was hanged. But where is the letter all this while, that I may be jogging ?"

With that Don Quixote pulled out the table-book, and, retiring a little aside, he very seriously began to write the letter ; which he had no sooner finished, but he called Sancho, and ordered him to listen while he read it over to him, that he might carry it as well in his memory as in his pocket-book, in case he should have the ill luck to lose it by the way ; for so cross was fortune to him, that he feared every accident. "But, sir," said Sancho, "writs it over twice or thrice there in the book, and give it me, and then I will be sure to deliver the message safe enough I warrant ye : for it is a folly to think I can get it by heart ; alas, my memory is so bad, that many times I forget my own name ! but yet for all that, read it out to me, I beseech you, for I have a hugeous mind to hear it. I dare say, it is as fine as though it were in print."—"Well, then, listen," said Don Quixote.

*Don Quixote de la Mancha to Dulcinea del Toboso.*

“ High and Sovereign Lady !

“ He that is stabbed to the quick with the poniard of absence, and wounded to the heart with love’s most piercing darts, sends you that health which he wants himself, \* sweetest Dulcinea del Toboso. If your beauty reject me, if your virtue refuse to raise my fainting hopes, if your disdain exclude me from relief, I must at last sink under the pressure of my woes, though much inured to sufferings : for my pains are not only too violent, but too lasting. My trusty squire Sancho will give you an exact account of the condition to which love and you have reduced me, too beautiful ingrate ! If you relent at last, and pity my distress, then I may say I live, and you preserve what is yours. But if you abandon me to despair, I must patiently submit, and, by ceasing to breathe, satisfy your cruelty and my passion.—Yours, till death,

“ The Knight of the Woeful Figure.”

“ By the life of my father,” quoth Sancho, “ if I ever saw a finer thing in my born days ! How neatly and roundly you tell your mind, and how cleverly you bring in at last, ‘ The Knight of the Woeful Figure ? ’ Well, I say it again in good earnest, you are a devil at every thing, and there is no kind of thing in the versal world but what you can turn

---

\* Dulcissima Dulcinea.

your hand to."—"A man ought to have some knowledge of every thing," answered Don Quixote, "if he would be duly qualified for the employment I profess."—"Well then," quoth Sancho, "do so much as write the warrant for the three asses on the other side of that leaf; and pray write it mighty plain, that they may know it is your hand at first sight."—"I will," said Don Quixote; and with that he wrote it accordingly, and then read it in this form:

" My dear Niece,

" Upon sight of this my first bill of asses, be pleased to deliver three of the five which I left at home in your custody to Sancho Pança, my squire, for the like number received of him here in tale; and this, together with his receipt, shall be your discharge. Given in the very bowels of Sierra Morena, the 22d of August, in the present year."

" It is as it should be," quoth Sancho; "there only wants your name at the bottom."—"There is no need to set my name," answered Don Quixote, "I will only set the two first letters of it, and it will be as valid as if it were written at length, though it were not only for three asses, but for three hundred."—"I dare take your worship's word," quoth Sancho. "And now I am going to saddle Rozinante, and then you shall give me your blessing, for I intend to set out presently, without seeing any of your mad tricks; and I will relate, that I saw you perform so many, that she can desire no more."—

“ Nay,” said Don Quixote, “ I will have thee stay a while, Sancho, and see me stark naked ; it is also absolutely necessary thou shouldst see me practise some twenty or thirty mad gambols. I shall have dispatched them in less than half an hour, and when thou hast been an eye-witness of that essay, thou mayest with a safe conscience swear thou hast seen me play a thousand more ; for I dare assure thee, for thy encouragement, thou never canst exceed the number of those I shall perform.”—“ Good sir,” quoth Sancho, “ as you love me do not let me stay to see you naked ! it will grieve me so to the heart, that I shall cry my eyes out ; and I have blubbered and howled but too much since yesternight for the loss of my ass ; my head is so sore with it, I am not able to cry any longer : but if you will needs have me see some of your antics, pray, do them in your clothes out of hand, and let them be such as are most to the purpose, for the sooner I go, the sooner I shall come back, and the way to be gone is not to stay here. I long to bring you an answer to your heart’s content, and I will be sure to do it, or let the Lady Dulcinea look to it ; for if she does not answer it as she should do, I protest solemnly I will force an answer out of her guts by dint of good kicks and fisticuffs ; for it is not to be endured, that such a notable knight-errant as your worship is, should thus run out of his wits without knowing why or wherefore, for such a—odsbobs, I know what I know ; she had best not provoke me to speak it out ; for, by the Lord, I shall let fly, and out with it by wholesale, though it spoil the market.”

“ I protest, Sancho,” said Don Quixote, “ I think thou art as mad as myself.”—“ Nay, not so mad neither,” replied Sancho, “ but somewhat more choleric. But talk no more of that.—Let us see, how will you do for victuals when I am gone? Do you mean to do like the other madman yonder, rob upon the high-way, and snatch the goat-herds’ victuals from them by main force?”—“ Never let that trouble thy head,” replied Don Quixote, “ for though I had all the dainties that can feast a luxurious palate, I would feed upon nothing but the herbs and fruits which this wilderness will afford me; for the singularity of my present task consists in fasting, and half starving myself, and in the performance of other austeries.”—“ But there is another thing come into my head,” quoth Sancho; “ how shall I do to find the way hither again, it is such a bye-place?”—“ Take good notice of it before-hand,” said Don Quixote, “ and I will endeavour to keep hereabouts till thy return; besides, about the time when I may reasonably expect thee back, I will be sure to watch on the top of yonder high rock for thy coming. But now I bethink myself of a better expedient, thou shalt cut down a good number of boughs, and strew them in the way as thou ridest along, till thou gettest to the plains, and this will serve thee to find me again at thy return, like Perseus’s clue to the labyrinth in Crete.”

“ I will go about it out of hand,” quoth Sancho. With that he went and cut down a bundle of boughs, then came and asked his master’s blessing, and, after a shower of tears shed on both sides, mounted Reginante, which Don Quixote very seriously recom-

mended to his care, charging him to be as tender of that excellent steed as of his own person. After that he set forward toward the plains, strewing several boughs as he rode, according to order. His master importuned him to stay and see him do two or three of his antic postures before he went, but he could not prevail with him : however, before he was got out of sight he considered of it and rode back. "Sir, quoth he, " I have thought better of it and believe I had best take your advice, that I may swear with a safe conscience I have seen you play your mad tricks ; therefore I would see you do one of them at least, though I think I have seen you do a very great one already, I mean your staying by yourself in this desert."

"I had advised thee right," said Don Quixote ; "and therefore stay but while a man may repeat the Creed, and I will shew thee what thou wouldest see." With that, slipping off his breeches, and stripping himself naked to the waist, he gave two or three frisks in the air, and then pitching on his hands, he fetched his heels over his head twice together ; and as he tumbled with his legs aloft, discovered such rarities, that Sancho even made haste to turn his horse's head, that he might no longer see them, and rode away full satisfied, that he might swear his master was mad. And so we will leave him to make the best of his way till his return, which will be more speedy than might be imagined.

## CHAPTER XII.

*A continuation of the refined extravagancies by which the gallant Knight of La Mancha chose to express his love in the Sierra Morena.*

THE history relates, that as soon as the Knight of the Woeful Figure saw himself alone, after he had taken his frisks and leaps naked as he was, the prelude to his amorous penance, he ascended the top of a high rock, and there began seriously to consider with himself what resolution to take in that nice dilemma, which had already so perplexed his mind ; that is, whether he should imitate Orlando in his wild ungovernable fury, or Amadis in his melancholy mood. To which purpose, reasoning with himself, "I do not much wonder," said he, "at Orlando's being so very valiant, considering he was enchanted in such a manner, that he could not be slain, but by the thrust of a long pin through the bottom of his foot, which he sufficiently secured, always wearing seven iron soles to his shoes ; and yet this availed him nothing against Bernardo del Carpio, who, understanding what he depended upon, squeezed him to death between his arms at Roncevalles. But, setting aside his valour, let us examine his madness ; for that he was mad, is an unquestionable truth ; nor is it less certain, that his frenzy was occasioned by the assurances he had that the fair Angelica had resigned herself up to the unlawful

embraces of Medoro, that young Moor with curled locks, who was page to Agramont. Now, after all, seeing he was too well convinced of his lady's infidelity, it is not to be admired he should run mad: but how can I imitate him in his furies, if I cannot imitate him in their occasion? for I dare swear my Dulcinea del Toboso never saw a downright Moor in his own garb since she first beheld light, and that she is at this present speaking as right as the mother that bore her: so that I should do her a great injury, should I entertain any dishonourable thoughts of her behaviour, and fall into such a kind of madness as that of Orlando Furioso. On the other side I find, that Amadis de Gaul, without punishing himself with such distraction, or expressing his resentment in so boisterous and raving a manner, got as great a reputation for being a lover as any one whatsoever: for what I find in history as to his abandoning himself to sorrow, is only this: he found himself disdained, his lady Oriana having charged him to get out of her sight, and not to presume to appear in her presence till she gave him leave; and this was the true reason why he retired to the Poor Rock with the hermit, where he gave up himself wholly to grief, and wept a deluge of tears, till pitying heaven at last, commiserating his affliction, sent him relief in the height of his anguish. Now then, since this is true, as I know it is, what need have I to tear off my clothes, to rend and root up these harmless trees, or trouble the clear water of these brooks, that must give me drink when I am thirsty? No, long live the memory of Amadis de

Gaul, and let him be the great exemplar which Don Quixote de la Mancha chuses to imitate in all things that will admit of a parallel. So may it be said of the living copy, as was said of the dead original, that, if he did not perform great things, yet no man was more ambitious of undertaking them than he ; and though I am not disdained nor discarded by Dulcinea, yet it is sufficient that I am absent from her. Then it is resolved : and now, ye famous actions of the great Amadis, recur to my remembrance, and be my trusty guides to follow his example."—This said, he called to mind, that the chief exercise of that hero in his retreat was prayer ; to which purpose, our modern Amadis presently went and made himself a rosary of galls or acorns instead of beads ; but he was extremely troubled for want of a hermit to hear his confession, and comfort him in his affliction. However, he entertained himself with his amorous contemplations, walking up and down in the meadow, and writing some poetical conceptions in the smooth sand, and upon the barks of trees, all of them expressive of his sorrows, and the praises of Dulcinea ; but unhappily none were found entire and legible but these stanzas that follow :—

Ye lofty trees, with spreading arms,  
The pride and shelter of the plain ;  
Ye humbler shrubs, and flow'ry charms,  
Which here in springing glory reign !  
If my complaints may pity move,  
Hear the sad story of my love !

While with me here you pass your hours,  
 Should you grow faded with my cares,  
     I'll bribe you with refreshing showers,  
 You shall be watered with my tears.  
     Distant, though present in idea,  
     I mourn my absent Dulcinea

Del Toboso.

Love's truest slave despairing chose  
     This lonely wild, this desert plain,  
 The silent witness of the woes  
     Which he, though guiltless, must sustain.  
 Unknowing why those pains he bears,  
 He groans, he raves, and he despairs :  
     With ling'ring fires love racks my soul,  
 In vain I grieve, in vain lament ;  
     Like tortur'd fiends, I weep, I howl,  
 And burn, yet never can repent.  
     Distant, though present in idea,  
     I mourn my absent Dulcinea

Del Toboso.

While I through honour's thorny ways,  
     In search of distant glory rove,  
 Malignant fate my toil repays  
     With endless woes and hopeless love.  
 Thus I on barren rocks despair,  
 And curse my stars, yet bless my fair.  
     Love arm'd with snakes has left his dart,  
 And now does like a fury rave,  
     And scourge and sting in every part,  
 And into madness lash his slave.  
     Distant, though present in idea,  
     I mourn my absent Dulcinea

Del Toboso.

This addition of Del Toboso to the name of Dulcinea made those who found these verses laugh heart-

ily ; and they imagined, that when Don Quixote made them, he was afraid those who should happen to read them would not understand on whom they were made, should he omit to mention the place of his mistress's birth and residence ; and this was indeed the true reason, as he himself afterwards confessed. With this employment did our disconsolate knight beguile the tedious hours ; sometimes also he expressed his sorrows in prose, sighed to the winds, and called upon the Sylvan gods and Fauns, the Naiades, the Nymphs of the adjoining groves, and the mournful Echo, imploring their attention and condolment with repeated supplications ; at other times he employed himself in gathering herbs for the support of languishing nature, which decayed so fast, what with his slender diet, and what with his studied anxiety and intenseness of thinking, that had Sancho staid but three weeks from him, whereas by good fortune he staid but three days, the Knight of the Woeful Figure would have been so disfigured, that his mother would never have known the child of her own womb.

But now it is necessary we should leave him a while to his sighs, his sobs, and his amorous expostulations, and see how Sancho Pança behaved himself in his embassy. He made all the haste he could to get out of the mountain, and then taking the direct road to Toboso, the next day he arrived near the inn where he had been tossed in a blanket. Scarce had he descried the fatal walls, but a sudden shivering seized his bones, and he fancied himself to be again dancing in the air, so that he had a good mind to

have rode farther before he baited; though it was dinner-time, and his mouth watered strangely at the thoughts of a hot bit of meat; the rather, because he had lived altogether upon cold victuals for a long while. This greedy longing drew him near the inn, in spite of his aversion to the place; but yet when he came to the gate he had not the courage to go in, but stopped there, not knowing whether he had best enter or no. While he sat musing, two men happened to come out, and believing they knew him, "Look, master doctor," cried one to the other, "is not that Sancho Pança, whom the house-keeper told us her master had inveigled to go along with him?"—"The same," answered the other; "and more than that, he rides on Don Quixote's horse." Now these two happened to be the curate and the barber, who had brought his books to a trial, and passed sentence on them; therefore, they had no sooner said this, but they called to Sanchò, and asked him where he had left his master? The trusty squire presently knew them, and, having no mind to discover the place and condition he left his master in, told them he was taken up with certain business of great consequence at a certain place, which he durst not discover for his life. "How! Sancho," cried the barber, "you must not think to put us off with a flim-flam story; if you will not tell us where he is, we shall believe you have murdered him, and robbed him of his horse; therefore either satisfy us where you have left him, or we will have you laid by the heels."—"Look you, neighbour,"

quoth Sancho, "I am not afraid of words, do you see, I am neither a thief nor a man-slayer ; I kill nobody, so nobody kill me ; I leave every man to fall by his own fortune, or by the hand of him that made him. As for my master, I left him frisking and doing penance in the midst of yon mountain, to his heart's content." After this, without any further entreaty, he gave them a full account of that business, and of all their adventures ; how he was then going from his master to carry a letter to my Lady Dulcinea del Toboso, Lorenzo Curchuelo's daughter, with whom he was up to the ears in love.

The curate and barber stood amazed, hearing all these particulars ; and though they already knew Don Quixote's madness but too well, they wondered more and more at the increase of it, and at so strange a cast and variety of extravagance. Then they desired Sancho to shew them the letter. He told them it was written in a pocket-book, and that his master had ordered him to get it fairly transcribed upon paper at the next village he should come at. Whereupon the curate promising to write it out very fairly himself, Sancho put his hand into his bosom to give him the table-book ; but though he fumbled a great while for it, he could find none of it ; he searched and searched again, but it had been in vain though he had searched till dooms-day, for he came away from Don Quixote without it. This put him into a cold sweat, and made him turn as pale as death ; he fell a searching all his clothes, turned his pockets inside outwards, fumbled in his bosom again : but being at last convinced he had it not

about him, he fell a raving and stamping, and cursing himself like a madman ; he rent his beard from his chin with both hands, befisted his own forgetful skull, and his blubber cheeks, and gave himself a bloody nose in a moment. The curate and barber asked him what was the matter with him, and why he punished himself at that strange rate ?—" I deserve it all," quoth Sancho, " like a blockhead as I am, for losing at one cast no less than three asses, of which the least was worth a castle."—" How so ?" quoth the barber.—" Why," cried Sancho, " I have lost that same table-book, wherein was written Dulcinea's letter, and a bill of exchange drawn by my master upon his niece for three of the five asses which he has at home ;" and with that he told them how he had lost his own ass. But the curate cheered him up, and promised him to get another bill of exchange from his master written upon paper, where-as that in the table-book, not being in due form, would not have been accepted. With that Sancho took courage, and told them if it were so, he cared not a straw for Dulcinea's letter, for he knew it almost all by rote. " Then pr'ythee let us hear it," said the barber, " and we will see and write it." In order to this Sancho paused, and began to study for the words ; presently he fell a scratching his head, stood first upon one leg, and then upon another, gaped sometimes upon the skies, sometimes upon the ground ; at length, after he had gnawed away the top of his thumb, and quite tired out the curate and barber's patience, " Before George," cried he, " Mr. Doctor, I believe the devil is in it, for may I be

choaked if I can remember a word of this confounded letter, but only, that there was at the beginning, high and subterrane lady."—" Sovereign or super-humane lady, you would say," quoth the barber.—" Ay, ay," quoth Sancho, " you are in the right; but stay, now I think I can remember some of that which followed : ho ! I have it, I have it now—' He that is wounded, and wants sleep, sends you the dagger—which he wants himself—that stabbed him to the heart—and the hurt man does kiss your ladyship's hand—and at last, after a thousand hums and ha's, ' Sweetest Dulcinea del Toboso,' and thus he went on rambling a good while with I do not know what more of fainting, and relief, and sinking, till at last he ended with ' Yours till death, the Knight of the Woeful Figure.'"

The curate and the barber were mightily pleased with Sancho's excellent memory; insomuch, that they desired him to repeat the letter twice or thrice more, that they might also get it by heart, and write it down, which Sancho did very freely, but every time he made many odd alterations and additions as pleasant as the first. Then he told them many other things of his master, but spoke not a word of his own being tossed in a blanket at that very inn. He also told them, that if he brought a kind answer from the Lady Dulcinea, his master would forthwith set out to see and make himself an emperor, or at least a king; for so they two had agreed between themselves, he said; and that after all, it was a mighty easy matter for his master to become one, such was his prowess, and the strength of his arm;

which being done, his master would marry him to one of the empress's damsels, and that fine lady was to be heiress to a large country on the main land, but not to any island or islands, for he was out of conceit with them. Poor Sancho spoke all this so seriously, and so feelingly, ever and anon wiping his nose, and stroaking his beard, that now the curate and the barber were more surprised than they were before, considering the prevalent influences of Don Quixote's folly upon that silly credulous fellow. However, they did not think it worth their while to undeceive him yet, seeing only this was a harmless delusion, that might divert them a while ; and therefore they exhorted him to pray for his master's health, and long life, seeing it was no impossible thing, but that he might in time become an emperor as he said, or at least an archbishop, or somewhat else equivalent to it.

" But pray, good Mr Doctor," asked Sancho, " should my master have no mind to be an emperor, and take a fancy to be an archbishop, I would fain know what your archbishops-errant are wont to give their squires ?"—" Why," answered the curate, " they use to give them some parsonage, or sinecure, or some such other benefice, or church-living, which, with the profits of the altar, and other fees, brings them in a handsome revenue."—" Ay, but," says Sancho, " to put in for that, the squire must be a single man, and know how to answer, and assist at mass at least ; and how shall I do then, seeing I have the ill luck to be married ? nay, and besides I do not so much as know the first letter of my Christ.

Cross-Row. What will become of me, should it come into my master's head to make himself an archbishop, and not an emperor, as it is the custom of knights-errant?"—"Do not let that trouble thee, friend Sancho," said the barber; "we will talk to him about it, and advise him, nay, urge him to it as a point of conscience, to be an emperor, and not an archbishop, which will be better for him, by reason he has more courage than learning."

"Troth, I am of your mind," quoth Sancho, "though he is such a head-piece, that I dare say he can turn himself to any thing: nevertheless, I mean to make it the burthen of my prayers, that heaven may direct him to that which is best for him, and what may enable him to reward me most."—"You speak like a wise man and a good Christian," said the curate: "but all we have to do at present, is to see how we shall get your master to give over that severe unprofitable penance which he has undertaken; and therefore let us go in to consider about it, and also to eat our dinner, for I fancy it is ready by this time."—"Do you two go in if you please," quoth Sancho, "but as for me, I had rather stay without; and anon I'll tell you why I do not care to go in a' doors: however, pray send me out a piece of hot victuals to eat here, and some provender for Rozinante." With that they went in, and a while after the barber brought him out some meat; and returning to the curate, they consulted how to compass their design. At last the latter luckily bethought himself of an expedient that seemed most likely to take, as exactly fitting Don

Quixote's humour ; which was, that he should disguise himself in the habit of a damsel-errant, and the barber should alter his dress as well as he could, so as to pass for a squire, or gentleman-usher. "In that equipage," added he, "we will go to Don Quixote, and feigning myself to be a distressed damsel, I will beg a boon of him, which he, as a valorous knight-errant, will not fail to promise me. By this means I will engage him to go with me to redress a very great injury done me by a false and discourteous knight, beseeching him not to desire to see my face, nor ask me any thing about my circumstances, till he has revenged me of that wicked knight. This bait will take, I dare engage, and by this stratagem we will decoy him back to his own house, where we will try to cure him of his romantic frenzy."

## CHAP. XIII.

*How the Curate and Barber put their design in execution ; with other things worthy to be recorded in this important History.*

THE curate's project was so well liked by the barber, that they instantly put it into practice. First, they borrowed a complete woman's apparel of the hostess, leaving her in pawn a new cassock of the curate's ; and the barber made himself a long beard with a grizzled ox's tail, in which the inn-keeper used to hang his combs. The hostess being desirous

to know what they intended to do with those things, the curate gave her a short account of Don Quixote's distraction, and their design. Whereupon the inn-keeper and his wife presently guessed this was their romantic knight, that made the precious balsam ; and accordingly they told them the whole story of Don Quixote's lodging there, and of Sancho's being tossed in a blanket. Which done, the hostess readily fitted out the curate at such a rate, that it would have pleased any one to have seen him ; for she dressed him up in a cloth gown trimmed with borders of black velvet, the breadth of a span, all pinked and jagged ; and a pair of green velvet bodice, with sleeves of the same, and faced with white satin ; which accoutrements probably had been in fashion in old King Bamba's \* days. The curate would not let her encumber his head with a woman's head-gear, but only clapped upon his crown a white quilted cap which he used to wear a-nights, and bound his forehead with one of his garters, that was of black taffety, making himself a kind of muffler and vizard mask with the other : then he half-buried his head under his hat, pulling it down to squeeze in his ears : and as the broad brim flapped down over his eyes, it seemed a kind of umbrella. This done, he wrapped his cloak about him, and seated himself on his mule, side-ways like a woman : then the barber clapped on his ox-tail beard, half-red and half-grizzled, which hung from his chin down

---

\* An ancient Gothic king of Spain.

to his waist ; and, having mounted his mule, they took leave of their host and hostess, as also of the good-conditioned Maritornes, who vowed, though she was a sinner, to tumble her beads, and say a rosary to the good success of so arduous, and truly Christian an undertaking.

But scarce were they got out of the inn, when the curate began to be troubled with a scruple of conscience about his putting on woman's apparel, being apprehensive of the indecency of the disguise in a priest, though the goodness of his intention might well warrant a dispensation from the strictness of decorum : therefore he desired the barber to change dresses, for that in his habit of a squire, he should less prophane his own dignity and character, to which he ought to have a greater regard than to Don Quixote ; withal assuring the barber, that unless he consented to this exchange, he was absolutely resolved to go no farther, though it were to save Don Quixote's soul from hell. Sancho came up with them just upon their demur, and was ready to split his sides with laughing at the sight of these strange masqueraders. In short, the barber consented to be the damsel, and to let the curate be the squire. Now while they were thus changing sexes, the curate offered to tutor him how to behave himself in that female attire, so as to be able to wheedle Don Quixote out of his penance ; but the barber desired him not to trouble himself about that matter, assuring him, that he was well enough versed in female affairs to be able to act a damsel without any directions : however, he said he would not now stand

fiddling and managing his pins, to prick himself up, seeing it would be time enough to do that, when they came near Don Quixote's hermitage; and, therefore, having folded up his clothes, and the curate his beard, they spurred on, while their guide Sancho entertained them with a relation of the mad tattered gentleman whom they had met in the mountain,—however, without mentioning a word of the portmanteau or the gold ; for, as much a fool as he was, he loved money, and knew how to keep it when he had it, and was wise enough to keep his own counsel.

They got the next day to the place where Sancho had strewed the boughs to direct them to Don Quixote ; and therefore he advised them to put on their disguises, if it were, as they told him, that their design was only to make his master leave that wretched kind of life, in order to become an emperor. Thereupon they charged him on his life not to take the least notice who they were. As for Dulcinea's letter, if Don Quixote asked him about it, they ordered him to say he had delivered it ; but that by reason she could neither write nor read, she had sent him her answer by word of mouth ; which was, that, on pain of her indignation, he should immediately put an end to his severe penance, and repair to her presence. This, they told Sancho, together with what they themselves designed to say, was the only way to oblige his master to leave the desert, that he might prosecute his design of making himself an emperor ; assuring him they would

take care he should not entertain the least thought of an archbishoprick.

Sancho listened with great attention to all these instructions, and treasured them up in his mind, giving the curate and the barber a world of thanks for their good intention of advising his master to become an emperor, and not an archbishop ; for, as he said, he imagined in his simple judgment, that an emperor-errant was ten times better than an archbishop-errant, and could reward his squire a great deal better.

He likewise added, that he thought it would be proper for him to go to his master somewhat before them, and give him an account of his lady's kind answer ; for, perhaps, that alone would be sufficient to fetch him out of that place, without putting them to any further trouble. They liked this proposal very well, and therefore agreed to let him go, and wait there till he came back to give them an account of his success. With that Sancho rode away, and struck into the clefts of the rock, in order to find out his master, leaving the curate and the barber by the side of a brook, where the neighbouring hills, and some trees that grew along its banks, combined to make a cool and pleasant shade. There they sheltered themselves from the scorching beams of the sun, that commonly shines intolerably hot in those parts at that time, being about the middle of August, and hardly three o'clock in the afternoon. While they quietly refreshed themselves in that delightful place, where they agreed to stay till Sancho's return, they heard a voice, which, though unattend-

ed with any instrument, ravished their ears with its melodious sound : and what increased their surprise and their admiration was, to hear such artful notes, and such delicate music, in so unfrequented and wild a place, where scarce any rustics ever straggled, much less skilful songsters, as the person whom they heard unquestionably was ; for though the poets are pleased to fill the fields and woods with swains and shepherdesses, that sing with all the sweetness and delicacy imaginable, yet it is well enough known, that those gentlemen deal more in fiction than in truth, and love to embellish the descriptions they make, with things that have no existence but in their own brain. Nor could our two listening travellers think it the voice of a peasant, when they began to distinguish the words of the song, for they seemed to relish more of a courtly style than a rural composition. These were the verses.

### A SONG.

#### I.

WHAT makes me languish and complain ?

O 'tis disdain !

What yet more fiercely tortures me ?

'Tis jealousy.

How have I my patience lost ?

By absence crost

Then hopes farewell, there's no relief ;

I sink beneath oppressing grief ;

Nor can a wretch, without despair,

Scorn, jealousy, and absence bear.

## II.

What in my breast this anguish drove ?

Intruding love.

Who could such mighty ills create ?

Blind fortune's hate.

What cruel powers my fate approve ?

The powers above.

Then let me bear, and cease to moan ;

'Tis glorious thus to be undone :

When these invade, who dares oppose ?

Heaven, Love, and Fortune are my foes.

## III.

Where shall I find a speedy cure ?

Death is sure.

No milder means to set me free ?

Inconstancy.

Can nothing else my pains assuage ?

Distracting rage.

What, die or change ? Lucinda lose ;

O rather let me madness chuse !

But judge, ye gods, what we endure,

When death or madness are a cure !

The time, the hour, the solitariness of the place, the voice and agreeable manner with which the unseen musician sung, so filled the hearers' minds with wonder and delight, that they were all attention ; and when the voice was silent, they continued so too a pretty while, watching with listening ears to catch the expected sounds, expressing their satisfaction best by that dumb applause. At last, concluding the person would sing no more, they resolved to find out the charming songster : but as they were

going so to do, they heard the wished-for voice begin another air, which fixed them where they stood till it had sung the following sonnet :

#### A SONNET.

O sacred Friendship, heaven's delight,  
Which, tired with man's unequal mind,  
Took to thy native skies thy flight,  
While scarce thy shadow's left behind !

From thee, diffusive good below,  
Peace and her train of joys we trace ;  
But falsehood with dissembled show  
Too oft usurps thy sacred face.

Bless'd genius, then resume thy seat !  
Destroy imposture and deceit,  
Which in thy dress confound the ball !  
Harmonious peace and truth renew,  
Shew the false friendship from the true,  
Or Nature must to Chaos fall.

This sonnet concluded with a deep sigh, and such doleful throbs, that the curate and the barber, now out of pity, as well as curiosity before, resolved instantly to find out who this mournful songster was. They had not gone far, when, by the side of a rock, they discovered a man, whose shape and aspect answered exactly to the description Sancho had given them of Cardenio. They observed he stopt short as soon as he spied them, yet without any signs of fear ; only he hung down his head, like one aban-

doned to sorrow, never so much as lifting up his eyes to mind what they did. The curate, who was a good and a well-spoken man, presently guessing him to be the same of whom Sancho had given them an account, went towards him, and, addressing himself to him with great civility and discretion, earnestly entreated him to forsake this desart, and a course of life so wretched and forlorn, which endangered his title to a better, and from a wilful misery, might make him fall into greater and everlasting woes. Cardenio was then free from the distraction that so often disturbed his senses ; yet seeing two persons in a garb wholly different from that of those few rustics who frequented those desarts, and hearing them talk as if they were no strangers to his concerns, he was somewhat surprised at first ; however, having looked upon them earnestly for some time, " Gentlemen," said he, " whoever ye be, I find heaven, pitying my misfortunes, has brought ye to these solitary regions, to retrieve me from this frightful retirement, and recover me to the society of men : but because you do not know how unhappy a fate attends me, and that I never am free from one affliction but to fall into a greater, you perhaps take me for a man naturally endowed with a very small stock of sense, and, what is worse, for one of those wretches who are altogether deprived of reason. And indeed I cannot blame any one that entertains such thoughts of me ; for even I myself am convinced, that the bare remembrance of my disasters often distracts me to that degree, that, losing all sense of reason and knowledge, I unman myself

for the time, and launch into those extravagancies which nothing but height of frenzy and madness would commit : and I am the more sensible of my being troubled with this distemper, when people tell me what I have done during the violence of that terrible accident, and give me too certain proofs of it. And after all, I can allege no other excuse but the cause of my misfortune, which occasioned that frantic rage, and therefore tell the story of my hard fate, to as many as have the patience to hear it ; for men of sense, perceiving the cause, will not wonder at the effects ; and though they can give me no relief, yet at least they will cease to condemn me ; for a bare relation of my wrongs must needs make them lose their resentments of the effects of my disorder into a compassion of my miserable fate. Therefore, gentlemen, if you came here with that design, I beg that before you give yourselves the trouble of reprobating or advising me, you will be pleased to attend to the relation of my calamities ; for perhaps when you have heard it, you will think them past redress, and so will save yourselves the labour you would take." The curate and the barber, who desired nothing more than to hear the story from his own mouth, were extremely glad of his proffer ; and, having assured him they had no design to aggravate his miseries with pretending to remedy them, nor would they cross his inclinations in the least, they entreated him to begin his relation.

The unfortunate Cardenio then began his story, and went on with the first part of it, almost in the same words, as far as when he related it to Don

Quixote and the goat-herd, when the knight, out of superstitious niceness to observe the decorum of chivalry, gave an interruption to the relation, by quarrelling about Mr Elizabat, as we have already said. Then he went on with that passage concerning the letter sent him by Lucinda, which Don Ferdinand had unluckily found, happening to be by, to open the book of Amadis de Gaul first, when Lucinda sent it back to Cardenio, with that letter in it between the leaves ; which Cardenio told them was as follows :

#### LUCINDA TO CARDENIO.

“ I discover in you every day so much merit, that I am obliged, or rather forced, to esteem you more and more. If you think this acknowledgement to your advantage, make that use of it which is most consistent with your honour and mine. I have a father that knows you, and is too kind a parent ever to obstruct my designs, when he shall be satisfied with their being just and honourable : so that it is now your part to shew you love me, as you pretend, and I believe.”

“ This letter,” continued Cardenio, “ made me resolve once more to demand Lucinda of her father in marriage, and was the same that increased Don Ferdinand’s esteem for her, by that discovery of her sense and discretion, which so inflamed his soul, that from that moment he secretly resolved to de-

stroy my hopes e'er I could be so happy as to crown them with success. I told that perfidious friend what Lucinda's father had advised me to do, when I had rashly asked her for my wife before, and that I durst not now impart this to my father, lest he should not readily consent I should marry yet. Not but that he knew, that her quality, beauty, and virtue were sufficient to make her an ornament to the noblest house in Spain, but because I was apprehensive he would not let me marry till he saw what the duke would do for me. Don Ferdinand, with a pretended officiousness, proffered me to speak to my father, and persuade him to treat with Lucinda's. Ungrateful man! deceitful friend! ambitious Marius! cruel Catiline! wicked Sylla! perfidious Galalon! faithless Vellido! malicious Julian! \* treacherous, covetous Judas! thou all those fatal hated men in one, false Ferdinand! what wrongs had that fond confiding wretch done thee, who thus to thee unbosomed all his cares, all the delights, and secrets of his soul? What injury did I ever utter, or advice did I ever give, which were not all directed to advance thy honour and profit? But oh! I rave, unhappy wretch! I should rather accuse the cruelty of my stars, whose fatal influence pours mischiefs on me, which no earthly force can resist, or human art prevent. Who would have thought

---

\* Julian.—Count Julian brought the Moors into Spain, because the King Rodrigo had ravished his daughter.

that Don Ferdinand, whose quality and merit entitled him to the lawful possession of beauties of the highest rank, and whom I had engaged by a thousand endearing marks of friendship and services, should forfeit thus his honour and his truth, and lay such a treacherous design to deprive me of all the happiness of my life? But I must leave expostulating, to end my story. The traitor Ferdinand, thinking his project impracticable while I stayed near Lucinda, bargained for six fine horses the same day he promised to speak to my father, and presently desired me to ride away to his brother for money to pay for them. Alas! I was so far from suspecting his treachery, that I was glad of doing him a piece of service. Accordingly I went that very evening to take my leave of Lucinda, and to tell her what Don Ferdinand had promised to do. She bid me return with all the haste of an expecting lover, not doubting but our lawful wishes might be crowned, as soon as my father had spoke for me to be her's. When she had said this, I marked her trickling tears, and a sudden grief so obstructed her speech, that though she seemed to strive to tell me something more, she could not give it utterance. This unusual scene of sorrow strangely amazed and distressed me; yet because I would not murder hope, I chose to attribute this to the tenderness of her affection, and unwillingness to part with me. In short, away I went, buried in deep melancholy, and full of fears and imaginations, for which I could give no manner of reason. I delivered Don Ferdinand's letter to his brother, who received me with all the

kindness imaginable, but did not dispatch me as I expected. For to my sorrow, he enjoined me to tarry a whole week, and to take care the duke might not see me, his brother having sent for money unknown to his father: but this was only a device of false Ferdinand's; for his brother did not want money, and might have dispatched me immediately, had he not been privately desired to delay my return.

" This was so displeasing an injunction, that I was ready to come away without the money, not being able to live so long absent from my Lucinda, principally considering in what condition I had left her. Yet at last I forced myself to stay, and my respect for my friend prevailed over my impatience: but e'er four tedious days were expired, a messenger brought me a letter, which I presently knew to be Lucinda's hand. I opened it with trembling hands and an aching heart, justly imagining it was no ordinary concern that could urge her to send thither to me: and before I read it, I asked the messenger who had given it him? he answered me, ' That going by accidentally in the street about noon in our town, a very handsome lady, all in tears, had called him to her window, and with great precipitation, ' Friend,' said she, ' if you be a Christian, as you seem to be, for heaven's sake take this letter, and deliver it with all speed into the person's own hand to whom it is directed: I assure you in this, you will do a very good action; and that you may not want means to do it, take what is wrapped up in this;' and saying so, she threw a handkerchief, wherein

I found a hundred reals, this gold ring which you see, and the letter which I now brought you : which done, I having made her signs to let her know I would do as she desired, without so much as staying for an answer, she went from the grate. This reward, but much more that beautiful lady's tears, and earnest prayers, made me post away to you that very minute ; and so in sixteen hours I have travelled eighteen long leagues.'—While the messenger spoke, I was seized with sad apprehensions of some fatal news ; and such a trembling shook my limbs, that I could scarce support myself. At length, however, I ventured to read the letter, which contained these words :

" DON FERDINAND, according to his promise, has desired your father to speak to mine ; but he has done that for himself which you had engaged him to do for you : for he has demanded me for his wife ; and my father, allured by the advantages which he expects from such an alliance, has so far consented, that two days hence the marriage is to be performed, and with such privacy, that only heaven and some of the family are to be witnesses. Judge of the affliction of my soul by that concern, which, I guess, fills your own ; and therefore haste to me, my dear Cardenio. The issue of this business will shew you how much I love you : and grant, propitious heaven, this may reach your hand e'er mine is in danger of being joined with his who keeps his promises so ill."

"I had no sooner read the letter," added Cardenio, "but away I flew, without waiting for my dispatch; for then I too plainly discovered Don Ferdinand's treachery, and that he had only sent me to his brother to take the advantage of my absence. Revenge, love, and impatience gave me wings, so that I got home privately the next day, just when it grew duskish, in good time to speak with Lucinda; and leaving my mule at the honest man's house who brought me the letter, I went to wait upon my mistress, whom I luckily found at the\* window, the only witness of our loves. She presently knew me, and I her, but she did not welcome me as I expected, nor did I find her in such a dress as I thought suitable to our circumstances. But what man has assurance enough but to pretend to know thoroughly the riddle of a woman's mind, and who could ever hope to fix her mutable nature?"—'Cardenio,' said Lucinda to me, 'my wedding-clothes are on, and the perfidious Ferdinand, with my covetous father, and the rest, stay for me in the hall, to perform the marriage-rites; but they shall sooner be witnesses of my death than of my nuptials. Be not troubled, my dear Cardenio; but rather strive to be present at that sacrifice. I promise thee, if entreaties and words cannot prevent it, I have a dagger that shall

---

\* *A la rexa*, at the iron grate. In Spain the lovers make their courtship at a low window that has a grate before it, having seldom admission into the house till the parents on both sides have agreed.

do me justice; and my death, at least, shall give thee undeniable assurances of my love and fidelity.' —' Do, madam,' cried I to her with precipitation, and so disordered, that I did not know what I said; ' let your actions verify your words; let us leave nothing unattempted which may serve our common interests; and, I assure you, if my sword does not defend them well, I will turn it upon my own breast, rather than outlive my disappointment.' I cannot tell whether Lucinda heard me, for she was called away in great haste, the bridegroom impatiently expecting her. My spirit forsook me when she left me, and my sorrows and confusion cannot be expressed. Methought I saw the sun set for ever; and my eyes and senses partaking of my distraction, I could not so much as spy the door to go into the house, and seemed rooted to the place where I stood. But at last, the consideration of my love having roused me out of this stupifying astonishment, I got into the house without being discovered, every thing being there in a hurry; and going into the hall, I hid myself behind the hangings, where two pieces of tapestry met, and gave me liberty to see, without beeing seen. Who can describe the various thoughts, the doubts, the fears, the anguish that perplexed and tossed my soul while I stood waiting there! Don Ferdinand entered the hall, not like a bridegroom, but in his usual habit, with only a cousin-german of Lucinda's, the rest were the people of the house: some time after came Lucinda herself, with her mother, and two waiting-women. I perceived she was as richly dressed as was consistent,

with her quality, and the solemnity of the ceremony ; but the distraction that possessed me lent me no time to note particularly the apparel she had on. I only marked the colours, that were carnation and white, and the splendour of the jewels that enriched her dress in many places ; but nothing equalled the lustre of her beauty, that adorned her person much more than all those ornaments. Oh memory ! thou fatal enemy of my ease, why dost thou now so faithfully represent to the eyes of my mind Lucinda's incomparable charms ! why dost thou not rather shew me what she did then, that, moved by so provoking a wrong, I may endeavour to revenge it, or at least to die ! Forgive me these tedious digressions, gentlemen ; alas ! my woes are not such as can or ought to be related with brevity, for to me, every circumstance seems worthy to be enlarged upon."

The curate assured Cardenio, that they attended every word with a mournful pleasure, that made them greedy of hearing the least passage. With that Cardenio went on. "All parties being met," said he, "the priest entered, and, taking the young couple by the hands, he asked Lucinda whether she were willing to take Don Ferdinand for her wedded husband ? With that, I thrust out my head from between the two pieces of tapestry, listening with anxious heart to hear her answer, upon which depended my life and happiness. Dull, heartless wretch that I was ! Why did I not then shew myself ! why did I not call to her aloud, ' Consider what thou dost, Lucinda ; thou art mine, and canst not be another man's : nor canst thou now speak the fatal yes,

without injuring heaven, thyself, and me, and murdering thy Cardenio ! And thou, perfidious Ferdinand, who darest to violate all rights, both human and divine, to rob me of my treasure ! canst thou hope to deprive me of the comfort of my life with impunity ? Or thinkest thou that any consideration can stifle my resentment when my honour and my love lie at stake ? Fool that I am ! now that it is too late, and danger is far distant, I say what I should have done, and not what I did then. After I have suffered the treasure of my soul to be stolen, I exclaim against the thief whom I might have punished for the base attempt, had I had but so much resolution to revenge, as I have now to complain. Then let me rather accuse my faint heart that durst not do me right, and let me die here like a wretch, void both of sense and honour, the outcast of society and nature. The priest stood waiting for Lucinda's answer a good while before she gave it ; and all that time I expected she would have pulled out her dagger, or unloosed her tongue to plead her former engagement to me. But alas ! to my eternal disappointment, I heard her at last, with a feeble voice, pronounce the fatal *yes* ; and then Don Ferdinand saying the same, and giving her the ring, the sacred knot was tied, which death alone can dissolve. Then did the faithless bridegroom advance to embrace his bride ; but she, laying her hand upon her heart, in that very moment swooned away in her mother's arms. Oh ! what confusion seized me, what pangs, what torments racked me, seeing the falsehood of Lucinda's promises, all my hopes shipwrecked, and

the only thing that made me wish to live, for ever ravished from me ! Confounded, and despairing, I looked upon myself as abandoned by heaven to the cruelty of my destiny ; and the violence of my griefs stifling my sighs, and denying a passage to my tears, I felt myself transfixed with killing anguish, and burning with jealous rage and vengeance. In the mean time the whole company was troubled at Lucinda's swooning ; and as her mother unclasped her gown before, to give her air, a folded paper was found in her bosom, which Don Ferdinand immediately snatched ; then, stepping a little aside, he opened it and read it by the light of one of the tapers ; and as soon as he had done, he as it were let himself fall upon a chair, and there he sate with his hand upon the side of his face, with all the signs of melancholy and discontent, as unmindful of his bride as if he had been insensible of her accident. For my own part, seeing all the house thus in an uproar, I resolved to leave the hated place, without caring whether I were seen or not, and in case I were seen, I resolved to act such a desperate part in punishing the traitor Ferdinand, that the world should at once be informed of his perfidiousness, and the severity of my just resentment ; but my destiny, that preserved me for greater woes (if greater can be) allowed me then the use of the small remainder of my senses, which afterwards quite forsook me, so that I left the house, without revenging myself on my enemies, whom I could easily have sacrificed to my rage in this unexpected disorder ; and I chose to inflict upon myself, for my credulity, the punishment

which their infidelity deserved. I went to the messenger's house where I had left my mule, and without so much as bidding him adieu, I mounted, and left the town like another Lot; without turning to give it a parting look ; and as I rode along the fields, darkness and silence round me, I vented my passion in execrations against the treacherous Ferdinand, and in as loud complaints of Lucinda's breach of vows and ingratitude. I called her cruel, ungrateful, false, but above all, covetous and sordid, since the wealth of my enemy was what had induced her to forego her vows to me. But then, again, said I to myself, it is no strange thing for a young lady, that was so strictly educated, to yield herself up to the guidance of her father and mother, who had provided her a husband of that quality and fortune. But yet with truth and justice she might have pleaded that she was mine before. In fine, I concluded that ambition had got the better of her love, and made her forget her promises to Cardenio. Thus abandoning myself to these tempestuous thoughts, I rode on all that night, and about break of day I struck into one of the passes that lead into these mountains, where I wandered for three days together without keeping any road, till at last, coming to a certain valley that lies somewhere hereabouts, I met some shepherds, of whom I inquired the way to the most craggy and inaccessible part of these rocks. They directed me, and I made all the haste I could to get thither, resolved to linger out my hated life far from the converse of false, ungrateful mankind. When I came among these desarts, my

mule, through weariness and hunger, or rather to get rid of so useless a load as I was, fell down dead, and I myself was so weak, so tired and dejected, being almost famished, and withal destitute and careless of relief, that I soon laid myself down, or rather fainted on the ground, where I lay a considerable while, I do not know how long, extended like a corpse. When I came to myself again, I got up, and could not perceive I had any appetite to eat : I found some goatherds by me, who, I suppose, had given me some sustenance, though I was not sensible of their relief ; for they told me in what a wretched condition they found me, staring, and talking so strangely, that they judged I had quite lost my senses. I have indeed since that had but too much cause to think that my reason sometimes leaves me, and that I commit those extravagancies which are only the effects of senseless rage and frenzy ; tearing my clothes, howling through these desarts, filling the air with curses and lamentations, and idly repeating a thousand times Lucinda's name ; all my wishes at that time being to breathe out my soul with the dear word upon my lips ; and when I come to myself, I am commonly so weak and so weary, that I am scarce able to stir. As for my place of abode, it is usually some hollow cork-tree, into which I creep at night ; and there some few goatherds, whose cattle browse on the neighbouring mountains, out of pity and christian charity, sometimes leave some victuals for the support of my miserable life ; for, even when my reason is absent, nature performs its animal functions, and

instinct guides me to satisfy it. Sometimes these good people meet me in my lucid intervals, and chide me for taking that from them by force and surprise, which they are always so ready to give me willingly ; for which violence I can make no other excuse but the extremity of my distraction. Thus must I drag a miserable being, until heaven, pitying my afflictions, will either put a period to my life, or blot out of my memory perjured Lucinda's beauty and ingratitude, and Ferdinand's perfidiousness. Could I but be so happy e'er I die, I might then hope to be able, in time, to compose my frantic thoughts ; but if I must despair of such a favour, I have no other way but to recommend my soul to heaven's mercy ; for I am not able to extricate my body or my mind out of that misery into which I have unhappily plunged myself.

“ Thus, gentlemen, I have given you a faithful account of my misfortunes. Judge now whether it was possible I should relate them with less concern. And pray do not lose time to prescribe remedies to a patient who will make use of none. I will, and can, have no health without Lucinda ; since she forsakes me, I must die. She has convinced me, by her infidelity, that she desires my ruin ; and by my unparalleled sufferings to the last, I will strive to convince her I deserved a better fate. Let me then suffer on, and may I be the only unhappy creature whom despair could not relieve, while the impossibility of receiving comfort brings cure to so many other wretches.”

Here Cardenio made an end of his mournful story ; and just as the curate was preparing to give him his best advice and consolation, he was prevented by a voice that saluted his ears, and in mournful accents pronounced what will be rehearsed in the Fourth Book of this narration.

---

**PART I. BOOK IV.**

---

**CHAPTER I.**

*The pleasant new Adventure the Curate and Barber met with in Sierra Morena, or Black Mountain.*

Most fortunate and happy was the age that ushered into the world that most daring knight Don Quixote de la Mancha ! for from his generous resolution to revive and restore the ancient order of knight-errantry, that was not only wholly neglected, but almost lost and abolished, our age, barren in itself of pleasant recreations, derives the pleasure it reaps from his true history, and the various tales and episodes thereof, in some respects no less pleasing, artful, and authentic, than the history itself. We told you that as the curate was preparing to give Cardenio some seasonable consolation, he was prevented by a voice, whose doleful complaints reached his ears. "O heavens," cried the unseen mourner, "is it possible I have at last found out a place that will afford a private grave to this miserable body, whose load I so repine to bear? Yes, if the silence and solitude of these desarts do not deceive me, here I may die concealed from human

eyes. Ah me ! ah wretched creature ! to what extremity has affliction driven me, reduced to think these hideous woods and rocks a kind retreat ! it is true, indeed, I may here freely complain to heaven, and beg for that relief which I might ask in vain of false mankind : for it is vain, I find, to seek below either counsel, ease, or remedy." The curate and his company, who heard all this distinctly, justly conjectured they were very near the person who thus expressed his grief, and therefore rose to find him out. They had not gone about twenty paces, before they spied a youth in a country habit, sitting at the foot of a rock behind an ash-tree ; but they could not well see his face, being bowed almost upon his knees, as he sat washing his feet in a rivulet that glided by. They approached him so softly that he did not perceive them : and, as he was gently paddling in the clear water, they had time to discern that his legs were as white as alabaster, and so taper, so curiously proportioned, and so fine, that nothing of the kind could appear more beautiful. Our observers were amazed at this discovery, rightly imagining that such tender feet were not used to trudge in rugged ways, or measure the steps of oxen at the plough, the common employments of people in such apparel ; and therefore the curate, who went before the rest, whose curiosity was heightened by this sight, beckoned to them to step aside, and hide themselves behind some of the little rocks that were by ; which they did, and from thence making a stricter observation, they found he had on a grey double-skirted jerkin, girt tight about his body with a linen

towel. He wore also a pair of breeches, and gamashes of grey cloth, and a grey huntsman's cap on his head. His gamashes were now pulled up to the middle of his leg, which really seemed to be of snowy alabaster. Having made an end of washing his beauteous feet, he immediately wiped them with a handkerchief, which he pulled out from under his cap; and with that, looking up, he discovered so charming a face, so accomplished a beauty, that Cardenio could not forbear saying to the curate, that since this was not Lucinda, it was certainly no human form, but an angel. And then the youth taking off his cap, and shaking his head, an incredible quantity of lovely hair flowed down upon his shoulders, and not only covered them, but almost all his body; by which they were now convinced, that what they at first took to be a country lad, was a young woman, and one of the most beautiful creatures in the world. Cardenio was not less surprised than the other two, and once more declared, that no face could vie with her's but Lucinda's. To part her dishevelled tresses, she only used her slender fingers, and at the same time discovered so fine a pair of arms, and hands so white and lovely, that our three admiring gazers grew more impatient to know who she was, and moved forward to accost her. At the noise they made, the pretty creature started; and peeping through her hair, which she hastily removed from before her eyes with both her hands, she no sooner saw three men coming towards her, but in a mighty fright she snatched up a little

bundle that lay by her, and fled as fast as she could, without so much as staying to put on her shoes, or do up her hair. But alas ! scarce had she gone six steps, when her tender feet not being able to endure the rough encounter of the stones, the poor affrighted fair fell on the hard ground ; so that those from whom she fled, hastening to help her, " Stay, madam," cried the curate, " whoever you be you have no reason to fly ; we have no other design but to do you service." With that, approaching her, he took her by the hand, and perceiving she was so disordered with fear and confusion, that she could not answer a word, he strove to compose her mind with kind expressions. " Be not afraid, madam," continued he ; " though your hair has betrayed what your disguise concealed from us, we are but the more disposed to assist you, and do you all manner of service. Then pray tell us how we may best do it. I imagine it was no slight occasion that made you obscure your singular beauty under so unworthy a disguise, and venture into this desart, where it was the greatest chance in the world that ever you met with us. However, we hope it is not impossible to find a remedy for your misfortunes; since there are none which reason and time will not at last surmount : and therefore, madam, if you have not absolutely renounced all human comfort, I beseech you tell us the cause of your affliction, and assure yourself we do not ask this out of mere curiosity, but a real desire to serve you, and either to condole or assuage your grief."

While the curate endeavoured thus to remove the trembling fair-one's apprehension, she stood amazed, staring, without speaking a word, sometimes upon one, sometimes upon another, like one scarce well awake, or like an ignorant clown who happens to see some strange sight. But at last the curate, having given her time to recollect herself, and persisting in his earnest and civil entreaties, she fetched a deep sigh, and then unclosing her lips, broke silence in this manner. " Since this desert has not been able to conceal me, and my hair has betrayed me, it would be needless now for me to dissemble with you ; and since you desire to hear the story of my misfortunes, I cannot in civility deny you, after all the obliging offers you have been pleased to make me : but yet, gentlemen, I am much afraid, what I have to say will but make you sad, and afford you little satisfaction ; for you will find my disasters are not to be remedied. There is one thing that troubles me yet more ; it shocks my nature to think I must be forced to reveal to you some secrets which I had a design to have buried in my grave : but yet considering the garb and the place you have found me in, I fancy it will be better for me to tell you all, than to give occasion to doubt of my past conduct and my present designs, by an affected reservedness." The disguised lady having made this answer, with a modest blush and extraordinary discretion, the curate and his company, who now admired her the more for her sense, renewed their kind offers and pressing solicitations ; and then they modestly let her retire a moment to some distance to put herself

in decent order. Which done, she returned, and being all seated on the grass, after she had used no small violence to smother her tears, she thus began her story.

" I was born in a certain town of Andalusia, from which a duke takes his title, that makes him a grandee of Spain. This duke has two sons, the eldest heir to his estate, and, as it may be presumed, of his virtues ; the youngest heir to nothing I know of, but the treachery of Vellido, \* and the deceitfulness of Galalon. † My father, who is one of his vassals, is but of low degree ; but so very rich, that had fortune equalled his birth to his estate, he could have wanted nothing more, and I, perhaps, had never been so miserable ; for I verily believe, my not being of noble blood is the chief occasion of my ruin. True it is my parents are not so meanly born, as to have any cause to be ashamed of their original, nor so high as to alter the opinion I have that my misfortune proceeds from their lowness. It is true, they have been farmers from father to son, yet without any mixture or stain of infamous or scandalous blood. They are old rusty ‡ Christians (as we call our true primitive Spaniards) and the antiquity of their family, together with their large possessions,

---

\* Who murdered Sancho, King of Castile.

† Who betrayed the French army at Roncesvalles.

‡ *Ranciosos* in the original : a metaphor taken from rusty bacon, yellow and mouldy, as it were, with age. It is a farmer's daughter speaks this.

and the port they live in, raises them much above their profession, and has by little and little almost universally gained them the name of gentlemen, setting them, in a manner, equal to many such in the world's esteem. As I am their only child, they ever loved me with all the tenderness of indulgent parents ; and their great affection made them esteem themselves happier in their daughter, than in the peaceable enjoyment of their large estate. Now as it was my good fortune to be possessed of their love, they were pleased to trust me with their substance. The whole house and estate was left to my management, and I took such care not to abuse the trust reposed in me, that I never forfeited their good opinion of my discretion. The time I had to spare from the care of the family, I commonly employed in the usual exercises of young women, sometimes making bone-lace, or at my needle, and now and then reading some good book, or playing on the harp ; having experienced that music was very proper to recreate the wearied mind : and this was the innocent life I led. I have not descended to these particulars out of vain ostentation, but merely that when I come to relate my misfortunes, you may observe I do not owe them to my ill conduct. While I thus lived the life of a nun, unseen, as I thought, by any body but our own family, and never leaving the house but to go to church, which was commonly betimes in the morning, and always with my mother, and so close hid in a veil that I could scarce find my way ; notwithstanding all the care that was taken to keep me from being seen, it was unhappily

rumoured abroad that I was handsome, and to my eternal disquiet, love intruded into my peaceful retirement. Don Ferdinand, second son to the duke I have mentioned, had a sight of me"—Scarce had Cardenio heard Don Ferdinand named, but he changed colour, and betrayed such a disorder of body and mind, that the curate and the barber were afraid he would have fallen into one of those frantic fits that often used to take him ; but by good fortune it did not come to that, and he only set himself to look stedfastly on the country maid, presently guessing who she was ; while she continued her story, without taking any notice of the alteration of his countenance.

" No sooner had he seen me," said she, " but, as he since told me, he felt in his breast that violent passion of which he afterwards gave me so many proofs. But not to tire you with a needless relation of every particular, I will pass over all the means he used to inform me of his love : he purchased the good-will of all our servants with private gifts : he made my father a thousand kind offers of service : every day seemed a day of rejoicing in our neighbourhood, every evening ushered in some serenade, and the continual music was even a disturbance in the night. He got a number of infinite love-letters transmitted to me, I do not know by what means, every one full of the tenderest expressions, promises, vows and protestations. But all this assiduous courtship was so far from inclining my heart to a kind return, that it rather moved my indignation ; insomuch, that I looked upon Don Ferdinand as my

greatest enemy, and one wholly bent on my ruin : not but that I was well enough pleased with his gallantry, and took a secret delight in seeing myself thus courted by a person of his quality. Such demonstrations of love are never altogether displeasing to women, and the most disdainful, in spite of all their coyness, reserve a little complaisance in their hearts for their admirers. But the disproportion between our qualities was too great to suffer me to entertain any reasonable hopes, and his gallantry, too singular not to offend me. Besides, my father, who soon made a right construction of Don Ferdinand's pretensions, with his prudent admonitions concurred with the sense I ever had of my honour, and banished from my mind all favourable thoughts of his addresses. However, like a kind parent, perceiving I was somewhat uneasy, and imagining the flattering prospect of so advantageous a match might still amuse me, he told me one day he reposed the utmost trust in my virtue, esteeming it the strongest obstacle he could oppose to Don Ferdinand's dishonourable designs ; yet if I would marry, to rid me at once of his unjust pursuit, and prevent the ruin of my reputation, I should have liberty to make my own choice of a suitable match, either in our own town or the neighbourhood ; and that he would do for me whatever could be expected from a loving father. I humbly thanked him for his kindness, and told him, that as I had never yet had any thoughts of marriage, I would try to rid myself of Don Ferdinand some other way. Accordingly I resolved to shun him with so much precaution, that

he should never have the opportunity to speak to me : but all my reservedness, far from tiring out his passion, strengthened it the more. In short, Don Ferdinand, either hearing or suspecting I was to be married, thought of a contrivance to cross a design that was likely to cut off all his hopes. One night, therefore, when I was in my chamber, nobody with me but my maid, and the door double-locked and bolted, that I might be secured against the attempts of Don Ferdinand, whom I took to be a man who would stick at nothing to compass his designs, unexpectedly I saw him just before me ; which amazing sight so surprised me, that I was struck dumb, and fainted away with fear. So I had not power to call for help, nor do I believe he would have given me time to have done it, had I attempted it ; for he presently ran to me, and taking me in his arms, while I was sinking with the fright, he spoke to me in such endearing terms, and with so much address, and pretended tenderness and sincerity, that I did not dare to cry out when I came to myself. His sighs, and yet more his tears, seemed to me undeniable proofs of his vowed integrity ; and I being but young, bred up in perpetual retirement, from all society but my virtuous parents, and unexperienced in those affairs, in which even the most knowing are apt to be mistaken, my reluctance abated by degrees, and I began to have some sense of compassion, yet none but what was consistent with my honour. However, when I was pretty well recovered from my first fright, my former resolution returned ; and then, with more courage than I thought I should

have had, ‘ My lord,’ said I, ‘ if at the same time that you offer me your love, and give me such strange demonstrations of it, you would also offer me poison, and leave to take my choice, I would soon resolve which to accept, and convince you by my death, that my honour is dearer to me than my life. To be plain, I can have no good opinion of a presumption that endangers my reputation ; and unless you leave me this moment, I will so effectually make you know how much you are mistaken in me, that if you have but the least sense of honour left, you will prevent the driving me to that extremity as long as you live. I was born your vassal, but not your slave ; nor does the greatness of your birth privilege you to injure your inferiors, or exact from me more than the duties which all vassals pay ; that excepted, I do not esteem myself less in my low degree, than you have reason to value yourself in your high rank. Do not then think to awe or dazzle me with your grandeur, or fright or force me into a base compliance ; I am not to be tempted with titles, pomp and equipage ; nor weak enough to be moved with vain sighs and false tears. In short, my will is wholly at my father’s disposal, and I will not entertain any man as a lover, but by his appointment. Therefore, my lord, as you would have me believe you so sincerely love me, give over your vain and injurious pursuit ; suffer me peaceably to enjoy the benefits of life in the free possession of my honour, the loss of which for ever embitters all life’s sweets ; and since you cannot be my husband, do not expect from me that affection which I cannot pay to any

other.'—‘What do you mean, charming Dorothea?’ cried the perfidious lord. ‘Cannot I be yours by the sacred title of husband? Who can hinder me, if you'll but consent to bless me on those terms? Too happy if I have no other obstacle to surmount. I am yours this moment, beautiful Dorothea: see, I give you here my hand to be yours, and yours alone for ever: and let all-seeing heaven, and this holy image here on your oratory, witness the solemn truth.’”

Cardenio, hearing her call herself Dorothea, was now fully satisfied she was the person whom he took her to be; however, he would not interrupt her story, being impatient to hear the end of it; only addressing himself to her, “Is then your name Dorothea, madam?” cried he. “I have heard of a lady of that name, whose misfortunes have a great resemblance with yours. But proceed, I beseech you, and when you have done, I may perhaps surprise you with an account of things that have some affinity with those you relate.” With that Dorothea made a stop to study Cardenio’s face, and his wretched attire, and then earnestly desired him, if he knew anything that concerned her, to let her know it presently; telling him, that all the happiness she had left, was only the courage to bear with resignation all the disasters that might befall her, well assured that no new one could make her more unfortunate than she was already. “Truly, madam,” replied Cardenio, “I would tell you all I know, were I sure my conjectures were true; but so far as I may judge by what I have heard hitherto, I do not think

it material to tell it you yet, and I shall find a more proper time to do it." Then Dorothea resuming her discourse : "Don Ferdinand," said she, "repeated his vows of marriage in the most serious manner ; and giving me his hand, plighted me his faith in the most binding words, and sacred oaths. But before I would let him engage himself thus, I advised him to have a care how he suffered an unruly passion to get the ascendant over his reason, to the endangering of his future happiness. 'My lord,' said I, 'let not a few transitory and imaginary charms, which could never excuse such an excess of love, hurry you to your ruin. Spare your noble father the shame and displeasure of seeing you married to a person so much below your birth ; and do not rashly do a thing of which you may repent, and that may make my life uncomfortable.' I added several other reasons to dissuade him from that hasty match, but they were all unregarded. Don Ferdinand, deaf to every thing but to his desires, engaged and bound himself like an inconsiderate lover, who sacrifices all things to his passion, or rather like a cheat, who does not value a breach of vows. When I saw him so obstinate, I began to consider what I had to do. I am not the first, thought I to myself, whom marriage has raised to unhop'd for greatness, and whose beauty alone has supplied her want of birth and merit. Thousands besides Don Ferdinand have married merely for love, without any regard to the inequality of wealth and birth.—The opportunity was fair and tempting ; and as fortune is not always favourable, I thought it an imprudent thing

to let it slip. Thought I to myself, while she kindly offers me a husband who assures me of an inviolable affection, why should I, by an unreasonable denial, make myself an enemy of such a friend?— And then there was one thing more; I apprehended it would be dangerous to drive him to despair by an ill-timed refusal; nor could I think myself safe alone in his hands, lest he should resolve to satisfy his passion by force; which done, he might think himself free from performing a promise which I would not accept; and then I should be left without either honour or an excuse: for it would be no easy matter to persuade my father, and the censorious world, that this nobleman was admitted into my chamber without my consent. All these reasons, which in a moment offered themselves in my mind, shook my former resolves; and Don Ferdinand's sighs, his tears, his vows, and the sacred witnesses by which he swore, together with his graceful mien, his extraordinary accomplishments, and the love which I fancied I read in all his actions, helped to bring on my ruin, as I believe they would have prevailed with any one's heart as free and as well guarded as was mine. Then I called my maid to be witness to Don Ferdinand's vows and sacred engagements, which he reiterated to me, and confirmed with new oaths and solemn promises; he called again on heaven, and on many particular saints, to witness his sincerity, wishing a thousand curses might fall on him, in case he ever violated his word. Again he sighed, again he wept, and moved me more and more with fresh marks of affection; and

the treacherous maid having left the room, the perfidious lord, presuming on my weakness, completed his pernicious design. The day which succeeded that unhappy night, had not yet begun to dawn, when Don Ferdinand, impatient to be gone, made all the haste he could to leave me. For after the gratifications of brutish appetite are past, the greatest pleasure then is, to get rid of that which entertained it. He told me, though not with so great a shew of affection, nor so warmly as before, that I might rely on his honour, and on the sincerity of his vows and promises ; and as a further pledge, he pulled off a ring of great value from his finger, and put it upon mine. In short, he went away, and my maid, who, as she confessed it to me, let him in privately, took care to let him out into the street by break of day, while I remained so strangely concerned at the thoughts of all these passages, that I cannot well tell whether I was sorry or pleased. I was in a manner quite distracted, and either forgot, or had not the heart, to chide my maid for her treachery, not knowing yet whether she had done me good or harm. I had told Don Ferdinand before he went, that seeing I was now his own, he might make use of the same means to come again to see me, till he found it convenient to do me the honour of owning me publicly for his wife ; but he came to me only the next night, and from that time I never could see him more, neither at church nor in the street, though for a whole month together I tired myself endeavouring to find him out. Being credibly informed he was still near us, and went à-hunting almost every

day, I leave you to think with what uneasiness I passed those tedious hours, when I perceived his neglect, and had reason to suspect his breach of faith. So unexpected a slight, which I looked upon as the most sensible affliction that could befall me, had like to have quite overwhelmed me. Then it was that I found my maid had betrayed me. I broke out into severe complaints of her presumption, which I had smothered till that time. I exclaimed against Don Ferdinand, and exhausted my sighs and tears without assuaging my sorrow. What was worse, I found myself obliged to set a guard upon my very looks, for fear my father and mother should inquire into the cause of my discontent, and so occasion my being guilty of shameful lies and evasions to conceal my more shameful disaster. But at last I perceived it was in vain to dissemble, and I gave a loose to my resentments; for I could no longer hold, when I heard that Don Ferdinand was married in a neighbouring town to a young lady of rich and noble parentage, and extremely handsome, whose name is Lucinda."—Cardenio hearing Lucinda named, felt his former disorder, but by good fortune it was not so violent as it used to be; and he only shrugged up his shoulders, bit his lips, knit his brows, and a little while after let fall a shower of tears, which did not hinder Dorothea from going on.

"This news," continued she, "instead of freezing up my blood with grief and astonishment, filled me with burning rage. Despair took possession of my soul, and in the transports of my fury I was ready

to run raving through the streets, and publish Don Ferdinand's disloyalty, though at the expence of my reputation. I do not know whether a remainder of reason stopped these violent motions, but I found myself mightily eased as soon as I had pitched upon a design that presently came into my head. I discovered the cause of my grief to a young country fellow that served my father, and desired him to lend me a suit of man's apparel, and to go along with me to the town where I heard Don Ferdinand was. The fellow used the best arguments he had to hinder me from so strange an undertaking ; but finding I was inflexible in my resolution, he assured me he was ready to serve me. Thereupon I put on this habit which you see, and taking with me some of my own clothes, together with some gold and jewels, not knowing but I might have occasion for them, I set out that very night, attended with that servant, and many anxious thoughts, without so much as acquainting my maid with my design. To tell you the truth, I did not well know myself what I went about ; for as there could be no remedy, Don Ferdinand being actually married to another, what could I hope to get by seeing him, unless it were the wretched satisfaction of upbraiding him with his infidelity ? In two days and a half we got to the town, where the first thing I did was to inquire where Lucinda's father lived. That single question produced a great deal more than I desired to hear ; for the first man I addressed myself to, shewed me the house, and informed me of all that had happened at Lucinda's marriage, which it seems was grown

so public, that it was the talk of the whole town. He told me how Lucinda had swooned away as soon as she had answered the priest, that she was contented to be Don Ferdinand's wife ; and how after he had approached to open her stays, to give her more room to breathe, he found a letter under her own hand, wherein she declared she could not be Don Ferdinand's wife, because she was already contracted to a considerable gentleman of the same town, whose name was Cardenio ; and that she had only consented to that marriage in obedience to her father. He also told me, that it appeared by the letter, and a dagger which was found about her, that she designed to have killed herself after the ceremony was over : and that Don Ferdinand, enraged to see himself thus deluded, would have killed her himself with that very dagger, had he not been prevented by those that were present. He added, it was reported, that upon this Don Ferdinand immediately left the town ; and that Lucinda did not come to herself till next day, and then she told her parents that she was really Cardenio's wife, and that he and she were contracted before she had seen Don Ferdinand. I heard also that this Cardenio was present at the wedding ; and that as soon as he saw her married, which was a thing he never could have believed, he left the town in despair, leaving a letter behind him, full of complaints of Lucinda's breach of faith, and to inform his friends of his resolution to go to some place where they should never hear of him more. This was all the discourse of the town when

we came thither, and soon after we heard that Lucinda also was missing, and that her father and mother were grieving almost to distraction, not being able to learn what was become of her. For my part, this news revived my hopes, having reason to be pleased to find Don Ferdinand unmarried. I flattered myself that heaven had perhaps prevented this second marriage, to make him sensible of violating the first, and to touch his conscience, in order to his acquitting himself in his duty like a christian, and a man of honour. So I strove to beguile my cares with an imaginary prospect of a far distant change of fortune, amusing myself with vain hopes that I might not sink under the load of affliction, but prolong life ; though this was only a lengthening of my sorrows, since I have now but the more reason to wish to be eased of the trouble of living. But while I staid in that town, not knowing what I had best to do, seeing I could not find Don Ferdinand, I heard a crier publicly describe my person, my clothes, and my age, in the open street, promising a considerable reward to any that could bring tidings of Dorothea. I also heard that it was rumoured I was run away from my father's house with the servant who attended me ; and that report touched my soul as much as Don Ferdinand's perfidiousness ; for thus I saw my reputation wholly lost, and that too for a subject so base and so unworthy of my nobler thoughts. Thereupon I made all the haste I could to get out of the town with my servant, who even then, to my think-

ing, began by some tokens to betray a faltering in the fidelity he had promised me. Dreading to be discovered, we reached the most desert part of this mountain that night : but, as it is a common saying, that misfortunes seldom come alone, and the end of one disaster is often the beginning of a greater, I was no sooner got to that place, where I thought myself safe, but the fellow, whom I had hitherto found to be modest and respectful, now, rather incited by his own villainy than my beauty, and the opportunity which that place offered, than by anything else, had the impudence to talk to me of love ; and seeing I answered him with anger and contempt, he would no longer lose time in clownish courtship, but resolved to use violence to compass his wicked design. But just heaven, which seldom or never fails to succour just designs, so assisted mine, and his brutish passion so blinded him, that, not perceiving he was on the brink of a steep rock, I easily pushed him down, and then, without looking to see what was become of him, and with more nimbleness than could be expected from my surprise and weariness, I ran into the thickest part of the desert to secure myself. The next day I met a countryman, who took me to his house amidst these mountains, and employed me ever since in quality of his shepherd. There I have continued some months, making it my business to be as much as possible in the fields, the better to conceal my sex. But notwithstanding all my care and industry, he at last discovered I was a woman, which made him

presume to importune me with beastly offers ; so that fortune not favouring me with the former opportunity of freeing myself, I left his house, and chose to seek a sanctuary among these woods and rocks, there with sighs and tears to beseech heaven to pity me, and to direct and relieve me in this forlorn condition ; or at least to put an end to my miserable life, and bury in this desert the very memory of an unhappy creature, who, more through ill fortune than ill intent, has given the idle world occasion to be too busy with her fame."

## CHAPTER II.

*An account of the beautiful Dorothea's discretion, with other pleasant passages.*

"THIS, gentlemen," continued Dorothea, "is the true story of my tragical adventure ; and now be you judges whether I had reason to make the complaint you overheard, and whether so unfortunate and hopeless a creature be in a condition to admit of comfort. I have only one favour to beg of you ; be pleased to direct me to some place where I may pass the rest of my life secure from the search and inquiry of my parents ; not but their former affection is a sufficient warrant for my kind reception, could the sense I have of the thoughts they must have of my past conduct permit me to return to them ; but when I think they must believe me guilty, and can now have nothing but my bare word

to assure them of my innocence, I can never resolve to stand their sight." Here Dorothea stopt, and the blushes that overspread her cheeks were certain signs of the discomposure of her thoughts, and the unfeigned modesty of her soul. Those who had heard her story were deeply moved with compassion for her hard fate, and the curate would not delay any longer to give her some charitable comfort and advice. But scarce had he begun to speak, when Cardenio, addressing himself to her, interrupted him. "How, madam," said he, taking her by the hand, "are you then the beautiful Dorothea, the only daughter of the rich Cleonardo?" Dorothea was strangely surprised to hear her father named, and by one in so tattered a garb. "And pray who are you, friend,"\* said she to him, "that know so well my father's name? for I think I did not mention it once throughout the whole narration of my afflictions."—"I am Cardenio," replied the other, "that unfortunate person, whom Lucinda, as you told us, declared to be her husband. I am that miserable Cardenio, whom the perfidiousness of the man who has reduced you to this deplorable condition, has also brought to this wretched state, to rags, to nakedness, to despair, nay, to madness itself, and all hardships and want of human comforts; only enjoying the privilege of reason by short intervals, to feel and bemoan my miseries the more.

---

*Y quien sois vos, hermano;* i.e. And pray, who are you, brother?

I am the man, fair Dorothea, who was the unhappy eye-witness of Don Ferdinand's unjust nuptials, and who heard my Lucinda give her consent to be his wife ; that heartless wretch, who, unable to bear so strange a disappointment, lost in amazement and trouble, flung out of the house, without staying to know what would follow her trance, and what the paper that was taken out of her bosom would produce. I abandoned myself to despair, and having left a letter with a person whom I charged to deliver it into Lucinda's own hands, I hastened to hide myself from the world in this desart, resolved to end there a life which from that moment I had abhorred as my greatest enemy. But fortune has preserved me, I see, that I may venture it upon a better cause ; for from what you have told us now, which I have no reason to doubt, I am enboldened to hope that providence may yet reserve us both to a better fate than we durst have expected. Heaven will restore you Don Ferdinand, who cannot be Lucinda's, and to me Lucinda, who cannot be Don Ferdinand's. For my part, though my interests were not linked with yours, as they are, I have so deep a sense of your misfortunes, that I would expose myself to any dangers to see you righted by Don Ferdinand ; and here, on the word of a gentleman and a christian, I vow and promise not to forsake you till he has done you justice, and to oblige him to do it at the hazard of my life, should reason and generosity prove ineffectual to force him to be blest with you."

Dorothea, ravished with joy, and not knowing how to express a due sense of Cárdenio's obliging offers, would have thrown herself at his feet, had he not civilly hindered it. At the same time the curate, discreetly speaking for them both, highly applauded Cárdenio for his generous resolution, and comforted Dorothea. He also very heartily invited them to his house, where they might furnish themselves with necessaries, and consult together how to find out Don Ferdinand, and bring Dorothea home to her father, which kind offer they thankfully accepted. Then the barber, who had been silent all this while, put in for a share, and handsomely assured them, he would be very ready to do them all the service that might lie in his power. After these civilities, he acquainted them with the design that had brought the curate and him to that place, and gave them an account of Don Quixote's strange kind of madness, and of their staying there for his squire, Cárdenio, hearing him mentioned, remembered something of the scuffle he had with them both, but only as if it had been a dream; so that though he told the company of it, he could not let them know the occasion. By this time they heard somebody call, and by the voice they knew it was Sancho Panza, who, not finding them where he had left them, tore his very lungs with hollowng. With that, they all went to meet him; which done, they asked him what was become of Don Quixote? "Alas!" answered Sancho, "I left him yonder, in an ill plight. I found him in his shirt, lean, pale,

and almost starved, sighing and whining for his lady Dulcinea. I told him, how that she would have him come to her presently to Toboso, where she looked for him out of hand ; yet for all this he would not budge a foot, but even told me he was resolved he would never set eyes on her sweet face again, till he had done some feats that might make him worthy of her goodness. So that," added Sancho, " if he leads this life any longer, I fear me my poor master is never like to be an emperor, as he is bound in honour to be, nay, not so much as an archbishop, which is the least thing he can come off with ; therefore, good sir, see and get him away by all means, I beseech you."—The curate bid him be of good cheer, for they would take care to make him leave that place whether he would or not ; and then turning to Cardenio and Dorothea, he informed them of the design which he and the barber had laid, in order to his cure, or at least to get him home to his house. Dorothea, whose mind was much eased with the prospect of better fortune, kindly undertook to act the distressed lady herself, which she said she thought would become her better than the barber, having a dress very proper for that purpose ; besides, she had read many books of chivalry, and knew how the distressed ladies used to express themselves when they came to beg some knight-errant's assistance. " This is obliging, madam," said the curate, " and we want nothing more ; so let us to work as fast as we can ; we may now hope to succeed, since you thus happily facilitate the design." Presently Dorothea took out of

her bundle a petticoat of very rich stuff, and a gown of very fine green silk ; also a necklace, and several other jewels out of a box ; and with these in an instant she so adorned herself, and appeared so beautiful and glorious, that they all stood in admiration that Don Ferdinand should be so injudicious as to slight so accomplished a beauty. But he that admired her most was Sancho Panza ; for he thought he had never set eyes on so fine a creature, and perhaps he thought right : which made him earnestly ask the curate who that fine dame was, and what wind had blown her thither among the woods and rocks ?—“ Who that fine lady, Sancho ?” answered the curate ; “ she is the only heiress in a direct line to the vast kingdom of Micomicon. Moved by the fame of your master’s great exploits, that spreads itself over all Guinea, she comes to seek him out, and beg a boon of him ; that is, to redress a wrong which a wicked giant has done her.”—“ Why, that’s well,” quoth Sancho ; “ a happy seeking, and a happy finding. Now, if my master be but so lucky as to right that wrong, by killing that son of a whore of a giant you tell me of, I am a made man. Yes, he will kill him, that he will, if he can but come at him, an he be not a hobgoblin ; for my master can do no good with hobgoblins. But, Mr Curate, an it please you, I have a favour to ask of you. I beseech you put my master out of conceit with all archbishoprics, for that is what I dread ; and therefore, to rid me of my fears, put it into his head to clap up a match with this same princess ; for by that means it will be past his power to make him-

self archbishop, and he will come to be emperor; and I a great man, as sure as a gun. I have thought well of the matter, and I find it is not at all fitting he should be an archbishop for my good ; for what should I get by it ? I am not fit for church preferment, I am a married man ; and now for me to go trouble my head with getting a licence to hold church livings, it would be an endless piece of business ; therefore, it will be better for him to marry out of hand this same princess, whose name I cannot tell, for I never heard it."—"They call her the Princess Micomicona," said the curate ; " for her kingdom being called Micomicon, it is a clear case she must be called so."—"Like enough," quoth Sancho ; " for I have known several men in my time go by the names of the places where they were born, as Pedro de Alcala, Juan de Ubeda, Diego de Valladolid ; and mayhap the like is done in Guinea, and the queens go by the name of their kingdoms."—"It is well observed," replied the curate : " As for the match, I'll promote it to the utmost of my power." Sancho was heartily pleased with this promise ; and, on the other side, the curate was amazed to find the poor fellow so strangely infected with his master's mad notions, as to rely on his becoming an emperor. By this time Dorothea being mounted on the curate's mule, and the barber having clapped on his ox-tail beard, nothing remained but to order Sancho to shew them the way, and to renew their admonitions to him, lest he should seem to know them, and to spoil the plot, which, if he did, they told him it would be the ruin of all his

hopes, and his master's empire. As for Cardenio, he did not think fit to go with them, having no business there ; besides, he could not tell but that Don Quixote might remember their late fray. The curate, likewise, not thinking his presence necessary, resolved to stay to keep Cardenio company ; so, after he had once more given Dorothea her cue, she and the barber went before with Sancho, while the two others followed on foot at a distance.

Thus they went on for about three quarters of a league, and then among the rocks they spied Don Quixote, who had by this time put on his clothes, though not his armour. Immediately Dorothea, understanding he was the person, whipped her palfrey, and when she drew near Don Quixote, her squire alighted and took her from her saddle. When she was upon her feet, she gracefully advanced towards the knight, and, with her squire, falling on her knees before him, in spite of his endeavours to hinder her ; “ Thrice valorous and invincible knight,” said she, “ never will I rise from this place, till your generosity has granted me a boon, which shall redound to your honour, and the relief of the most disconsolate and most injured damsel that the sun ever saw : and indeed if your valour and the strength of your formidable arm be answerable to the extent of your immortal renown, you are bound by the laws of honour, and the knighthood which you profess, to succour a distressed princess, who led by the resounding fame of your marvellous and redoubted feats of arms, comes from the remotest regions, to implore your protection.”—“ I cannot,”

said Don Quixote, “ make you any answer, most beautiful lady, nor will I hear a word more, unless you vouchsafe to rise.”—“ Pardon me, noble knight,” replied the petitioning damsel ; “ my knees shall first be rooted here, unless you will courteously condescend to grant me the boon which I humbly request.”—“ I grant it then, lady,” said Don Quixote, “ provided it be nothing to the disservice of my king, my country, and that beauty who keeps the key of my heart and liberty.”—“ It shall not tend to the prejudice or detriment of any of these,” cried the lady. With that Sancho closing up to his master, and whispering him in the ear, “ Grant it, sir,” quoth he, “ grant it, I tell ye ; it is but a trifle next to nothing, only to kill a great looby of a giant ; and she that asks this, is the high and mighty Princess Micomicona, Queen of the huge kingdom of Micomicon in Ethiopia.”—“ Let her be what she will,” replied Don Quixote, “ I will discharge my duty, and obey the dictates of my conscience, according to the rules of my profession.” . With that turning to the damsel, “ Rise, lady, I beseech you,” cried he ; “ I grant you the boon which your singular beauty demands.”—“ Sir,” said the lady, “ the boon I have to beg of your magnanimous valour, is, that you will be pleased to go with me instantly whither I shall conduct you, and promise not to engage in any other adventure, till you have revenged me on a traitor who usurps my kingdom, contrary to all laws both human and divine.”—“ I grant you all this, lady,” quoth Don Quixote ; “ and therefore from this moment shake off all desponding thoughts that sit

heavy upon your mind, and study to revive your drooping hopes ; for by the assistance of Heaven, and my strenuous arm, you shall see yourself restored to your kingdom, and seated on the throne of your ancestors, in spite of all the traitors that dare oppose your right. Let us then hasten our performance ; delay always breeds danger ; and to protract a great design is often to ruin it." The thankful princess, to speak her grateful sense of his generosity, strove to kiss the knight's hand ; however, he who was in every thing the most gallant and courteous of all knights, would by no means admit of such submission ; but having gently raised her up, he embraced her with an awful grace and civility, and then called to Sancho for his arms. Sancho went immediately, and having fetched them from a tree, where they hung like trophies, armed his master in a moment. And now the champion being completely accoutred, " Come on," said he, " let us go and vindicate the rights of this dispossessed princess." The barber was all this while upon his knees, and had enough to do to keep himself from laughing, and his beard from falling, which, if it had dropped off, as it threatened, would have betrayed his face and their whole plot at once. But being relieved by Don Quixote's haste to put on his armour, he rose up, and taking the princess by the hand, they both together set her upon her mule. Then the knight mounted his Rozinante, and the barber got on his beast. Only poor Sancho was forced to foot it, which made him fetch many heavy sighs for the loss of his dear Dapple : However,

he bore his crosses patiently, seeing his master in so fair a way of being next door to an emperor ; for he did not question but he would marry that princess, and so be at least King of Micomicon. But yet it grieved him, to think his master's dominions were to be in the land of the negroes, and that, consequently, the people, over whom he was to be governor, were all to be black. But he presently betook himself of a good remedy for that : " What care I," quoth he, " though they be blacks ? best of all ; it is but loading a ship with them, and having them into Spain, where I shall find chapmen enow to take them off my hands, and pay me ready money for them ; and so I'll raise a good round sum, and buy me a title or an office to live upon frank and easy all the days of my life. Hang him that has no shifts, say I ; it is a sorry goose that will not baste herself. Why, what if I am not so book learned as other folks, sure I have a head-piece good enough to know how to sell thirty or ten thousand slaves in the turn of a hand.† Let them even go higgledy-piggledy, little and great. What though they be as black as the devil in hell, let me alone to turn them into white and yellow boys ; I think I know how to lick my own fingers."

Big with these imaginations, Sancho trudged along so pleased and light-hearted, that he forgot his pain of travelling a-foot. Cardenio and the curate

---

† Literally, While one may say, take away these straws ; *en quitam alla essas pajás*, i. e. in a moment.

had beheld the pleasant scene through the bushes, and were at a loss what they should do to join companies. But the curate, who had a contriving head, at last bethought himself of an expedient ; and pulling out a pair of scissars, which he used to carry in his pocket, he snipped off Cardenio's beard in a trice ; and having pulled off his black cloak and a sad-coloured riding-coat which he had on, he equipped Cardenio with them, while he himself remained in his doublet and breeches. In which new garb Cardenio was so strangely altered, that he would not have known himself in a looking-glass. This done, they made to the high-way, and there staid till Don Quixote and his company were got clear of the rocks and bad ways, which did not permit horsemen to go so fast as those on foot. When they came near, the curate looked very earnestly upon Don Quixote, as one that was in a study whether he might not know him ; and then, like one that had made a discovery, he ran towards the knight with open arms, crying out, " Mirror of chivalry, my noble countryman Don Quixote de la Mancha ! the cream and flower of gentility ! the shelter and relief of the afflicted, and quintessence of knightherrantry ! how overjoyed am I to have found you !" At the same time he embraped his left leg.

Don Quixote, admiring what adorer of his heroic worth this should be, looked on him earnestly ; and at last calling him to mind, would have alighted to have paid him his respects, not a little amazed to meet him there. But the curate hindering him, " Reverend sir," cried the knight, " I beseech you,

let me not be so rude as to sit on horseback, while a person of your worth and character is on foot."—"Sir," replied the curate, "you shall by no means alight. Let your Excellency be pleased to keep your saddle, since, thus mounted, you every day achieve the most stupendous feats of arms and adventures that were ever seen in our age. It will be honour enough for an unworthy priest like me to get up behind some of your company, if they will permit me; and I will esteem it as great a happiness as to be mounted upon Pegasus, or the Zebra, or the fleet mare of the famous Moor Muzaraque, who to this hour lies enchanted in the dreary cavern of Zulema; not far distant from the great Compluto."—"Truly, good sir, I did not think of this," answered Don Quixote; "but I suppose my lady the princess will be so kind as to command her squire to lend you his saddle, and to ride behind himself, if his mule be used to carry double."—"I believe it will," cried the princess; "and my squire, I suppose, will not stay for my commands to offer his saddle, for he is too courteous and well-bred to suffer an ecclesiastical person to go a-foot, when we may help him to a mule."—"Most certainly," cried the barber; and with that dismounting, he offered the curate his saddle, which was accepted without much entreaty. By ill fortune the mule was a hired beast, and consequently unlucky; so, as the barber was getting up behind the curate, the resty jade gave two or three jerks with her hinder legs, that, had they met with Master Nicholas's skull or ribs, he would have bequeathed his rambling after Don

Quixote to the devil. However, he flung himself nimbly off, and was more afraid than hurt; but yet as he fell his beard dropt off, and being presently sensible of that accident, he could not think of any better shift than to clap both of his hands before his cheeks, and cry out he had broke his jaw-bone. Don Quixote was amazed to see such an overgrown bush of beard lie on the ground without jaws and bloodless. "Bless me," cried he, "what an amazing miracle is this! here is a beard as cleverly taken off by accident, as if a barber had mowed it." The curate, perceiving the danger they were in of being discovered, hastily caught up the beard, and, running to the barber, who lay all the while roaring and complaining, he pulled his head close to his own breast, and then muttering certain words, which he said were a charm appropriated to the fastening on of fallen beards, he fixed it on again so handsomely, that the squire was presently then as bearded and as well as ever he was before; which raised Don Quixote's admiration, and made him engage the curate to teach him the charm at his leisure; not doubting but its virtue extended further than to the fastening on of beards, since it was impossible that such a one could be torn off without fetching away flesh and all; and consequently such a sudden cure might be beneficial to him upon occasion. And now, every thing being set to rights, they agreed that the curate should ride first by himself, and then the other two by turns relieving one another, sometimes riding, sometimes walking, till they came to their inn, which was about two leagues off. So

Don Quixote, the princess, and the curate, being mounted, and Cardenio, the barber, and Sánchez, ready to move forwards on foot, the knight, addressing himself to the distressed damsel, “Now, lady,” said he, “let me entreat your greatness to tell me which way we must go, to do you service?” The curate, before she could answer, thought fit to ask her a question, that might the better enable her to make a proper reply. “Pray, madam,” said he; “towards what country is it your pleasure to take your progress? is it not towards the kingdom of Micomicon? I am very much mistaken if that be not the part of the world whither you desire to go.” The lady having got her cue, presently understood the curate, and answered that he was in the right: “Then,” said the curate, “your way lies directly through the village where I live, from whence we have a straight road to Carthagena, where you may conveniently take shipping; and if you have a fair wind and good weather, you may in something less than nine years, reach the vast lake Meona, I mean the Palus Maeotis, which lies somewhat more than a hundred days journey from your kingdom.”—“Surely, sir,” replied the lady, “you are under a mistake; for it is not quite two years since I left the place; and besides, we have had very little fair weather all the while, and yet I am already got thither, and have so far succeeded in my designs, as to have obtained the sight of the renowned Don Quixote de la Mancha, the fame of whose achievements reached my ears as soon as I landed in Spain, and

moved me to find him out, to throw myself under his protection, and commit the justice of my cause to his invincible valour."—"No more, madam, I beseech you," cried Don Quixote; "spare me the trouble of hearing myself praised, for I mortally hate whatever may look like adulation; and though your compliments may deserve a better name, my ears are too modest to be pleased with any such discourse: it is my study to deserve and to avoid applause. All I will venture to say is, that whether I have any valour or no, I am wholly at your service, even at the expence of the last drop of my blood; and therefore, waiving all these matters till a fit opportunity, I would gladly know of this reverend clergyman, what brought him hither, unattended by any of his servants, alone, and so slenderly clothed; for I must confess I am not a little surprised to meet him in this condition."—"To tell you the reason in few words," answered the curate, "you must know, that Master Nicholas, our friend and barber, went with me to Seville, to receive some money which a relation of mine sent me from the Indies, where he has been settled these many years. Neither was it a small sum, for it was no less than seventy thousand pieces of eight, and all of due weight, which is no common thing, you may well judge; but upon the road hereabouts we met four highwaymen, that robbed us of all we had, even to our very beards, so that the poor barber was forced to get him a chin-periwig. And for that young gentleman whom you see there," continued he, pointing to Cardenio, "after they had stripped him to his shirt,

they transfigured him as you see.\* Now every body hereabouts says, that those who robbed us were certainly a pack of rogues condemned to the gallies, who, as they were going to punishment, were rescued by a single man, not far from this place, and that with so much courage, that in spite of the king's officer and his guards, he alone set them all at liberty. Certainly this man was either mad, or as great a rogue as any of them ; for would any one that had a grain of sense or honesty, have let loose a company of wolves among sheep, foxes among innocent poultry, and wasps among the honey-pots ? He has hindered public justice from taking its course, broke his allegiance to his lawful sovereign, disabled the strength of his gallies, rebelled against him, and opposed his officers in contempt of the law, and alarmed the holy brotherhood, that had lain quiet so long ; nay, what is yet worse, he has endangered his life upon earth, and his salvation hereafter." Sancho had given the curate an account of the adventure of the galley-slaves, and this made him lay it on thick in the relation, to try how Don Quixote would bear it. The knight changed colour at every word, not daring to confess he was the pious knight-errant who had delivered those worthy gentlemen out of bondage. " These," said the curate, by way of conclusion, " were the men that reduced us to this condition ; and may heaven in mercy forgive him who freed them from the punishment they so well deserved !"

---

\* The priest had clipped off Cardenio's beard in haste.

## CHAPTER III.

*The pleasant stratagems used to free the enamoured Knight from the rigorous penance which he had undertaken.*

SCARCE had the curate made an end, when Sancho addressing himself to him, " Faith and truth," quoth he, " Master Curate, he that did that rare job was my master his nown self, and that not for want of fair warning ; for I bid him have a care what he did, and told him over and over, it would be a grievous sin to put such a gang of wicked wretches out of durance, and that they all went to the gallies for their roguery."—" You baffle-headed clown," cried Don Quixote, " is it for a knight-errant, when he meets with people laden with chains, and under oppression, to examine whether they are in those circumstances for their crimes, or only through misfortune ? We are only to relieve the afflicted, to look on their distress, and not on their crimes. I met a company of poor wretches, who went along sorrowful, dejected, and linked together like the beads of a rosary ; thereupon I did what my conscience and my profession obliged me to. And what has any man to say to this ? If any one dares say otherwise, saving this reverend clergyman's presence and the holy character he bears, I say, he knows little of knight-errantry, and lies like a son of a whore, and a base-born villain ; and this I will

make him know more effectually, with the convincing edge of my sword!" This said with a grim look, he fixed himself in his stirrups, and pulled his helm over his brows; for the basin, which he took to be Mambrino's helmet, hung at his saddlebow, in order to have the damage repaired which it had received from the galley-slaves. Thereupon Dorothea, by this time well acquainted with his temper, seeing him in such a passion, and that every body, except Sancho Panza, made a jest of him, resolved with her native sprightliness and address, to carry on the humour.—“I beseech you, sir,” cried she, “remember the promise you have made me, and that you cannot engage in any adventure whatsoever, till you have performed that we are going about. Therefore, pray assuage your anger; for had Master Curate known the galley-slaves were rescued by your invincible arm, I am sure he would rather have stitched up his lips, or bit off his tongue, than have spoken a word, that should make him incur your displeasure.”—“Nay, I assure you,” cried the curate, “I would sooner have twitted off one of my mustachoes into the bargain.”—“I am satisfied, madam,” cried Don Quixote, “and for your sake the flame of my just indignation is quenched; nor will I be induced to engage in any quarrel, till I have fulfilled my promise to your highness. Only, in recompense of my good intentions, I beg you will give us the story of your misfortunes, if this will not be too great a trouble to you; and let me know who and what, and how many are the persons of whom I must have due and full satisfaction

on your behalf."—"I am very willing to do it," replied Dorothea; "but yet I fear a story like mine, consisting wholly of afflictions and disasters, will prove but a tedious entertainment."—"Never fear that, madam," cried Don Quixote.—"Since then it must be so," said Dorothea, "be pleased to lend me your attention." With that Cardenio and the barber gathered up to her, to hear what kind of story she had provided so soon; Sancho also hung his ears upon her side-saddle, being no less deceived, in her than his master; and the lady having seated herself well on her mule, after coughing once or twice, and other preparations, very gracefully began her story.

"First, gentlemen," said she, "you must know my name is"—here she stopped short, and could not call to mind the name the curate had given her; whereupon finding her at a non-plus, he made haste to help her out. "It is not at all strange," said he, "madam, that you should be so discomposed by your disasters, as to stumble at the very beginning of the account you are going to give of them; extreme affliction often distracts the mind to that degree, and so deprives us of memory, that sometimes we for a while can scarce think on our very names: no wonder then, that the Princess Micomicona, lawful heiress to the vast kingdom of Micomicon, disordered with so many misfortunes, and perplexed with so many various thoughts for the recovery of her crown, should have her imagination and memory so encumbered; but I hope you will now recollect yourself, and be able to proceed."—"I

hope so too," said the lady, " and I will try to go through with my story, without any further hesitation. Know then, gentlemen, that the king, my father, who was called Tinacrio the sage, having great skill in the magic art, understood by his profound knowledge in that science, that Queen Xaramilla, my mother, should die before him, that he himself should not survive her long, and I should be left an orphan. But he often said, that this did not so much trouble him, as the foresight he had by his speculations, of my being threatened with great misfortunes, which would be occasioned by a certain giant, lord of a great island near the confines of my kingdom ; his name Pandafilando, surnamed of the Gloomy Sight ; because though his eye-balls are seated in their due place, yet he affects to squint and look askew on purpose to fright those on whom he stares. My father, I say, knew that this giant, hearing of his death, would one day invade my kingdom with a powerful army, and drive me out of my territories, without leaving me so much as the least village for a retreat ; though he knew withal that I might avoid that extremity, if I would but consent to marry him ; but as he found out by his art, he had reason to think I never would incline to such a match. And indeed I never had any thoughts of marrying this giant, nor really any other giant in the world, how unmeasurably great and mighty soever he were. My father therefore charged me patiently to bear my misfortunes, and abandon my kingdom to Pandafilando for a time, without offering to keep him out by force of arms, since this would

be the best means to prevent my own death and the ruin of my subjects, considering the impossibility of withstanding the devilish force of the giant. But withal, he ordered me to direct my course towards Spain, where I should be sure to meet with a powerful champion, in the person of a knight-errant, whose fame should at that time be spread over all the kingdom ; and his name, my father said, should be, if I forget not, Don Azote, or Don Gigote"—“ And it please you, forsooth,” quoth Sancho, “ you would say Don Quixote, otherwise called the Knight of the Woeful Figure.”—“ You are right,” answered Dorothea, “ and my father also described him, and said he should be a tall thin-faced man, and that on his right side, under the left shoulder, or somewhere thereabouts, he should have a tawny mole overgrown with a tuft of hair, not much unlike that of a horse’s mane.”—With that Don Quixote calling for his squire to come to him, “ Here,” said he, “ Sancho, help me off with my clothes, for I am resolved to see whether I be the knight of whom the necromantic king has prophesied.”—“ Pray, sir, why would you pull off your clothes,” cried Dorothea? —“ To see whether I have such a mole about me as your father mentioned,” replied the knight.—“ Your worship need not strip to know that,” quoth Sancho, “ for to my knowledge, you have just such a mark as my lady says, on the small of your back, which betokens you to be a strong-bodied man.”—“ That’s enough,” said Dorothea; “ friends may believe one another without such a strict examination ; and whether it be on the shoulder or on the

back-bone, it is not very material. In short, I find my father aimed right in all his predictions, and so do I in recommending myself to Don Quixote, whose stature and appearance so well agree with my father's description, and whose renown is so far spread, not only in Spain, but over all La Mancha, that I had no sooner landed at Ossuna, but the fame of his prowess reached my ears; so that I was satisfied in myself he was the person in quest of whom I came."

"But pray, madam," cried Don Quixote, "how did you do to land at Ossuna, since it is no seaport town?"—"Doubtless, sir," said the curate, before Dorothea could answer for herself, "the princess would say, that after she landed at Malaga, the first place where she heard of your feats of arms, was Ossuna."—"That is what I would have said," replied Dorothea.—"It is easily understood," said the curate; "then pray let your majesty be pleased to go on with your story."—"I have nothing more to add," answered Dorothea, "but that fortune has at last so far favoured me, as to make me find the noble Don Quixote, by whose valour I look upon myself as already restored to the throne of my ancestors; since he has so courteously and magnanimously vouchsafed to grant me the boon I begged, to go with me wheresoever I should guide him. For all I have to do is, to shew him this Pandafilando of the Gloomy Sight, that he may slay him, and restore that to me of which he has so unjustly deprived me. For all this will certainly be done with the greatest ease in the world, since it was foretold by Tinacrio the sage, my good and royal

father, who has also left a prediction written either in Chaldean or Greek characters (for I cannot read them) which denotes, that after the knight of the prophecy has cut off the giant's head, and restored me to the possession of my kingdom, if he should ask me to marry him, I should by no means refuse him, but instantly put him in possession of my person and kingdom."—"Well, friend Sancho," said Don Quixote, hearing this, and turning to the squire, "what thinkest thou now? Dost thou not hear how matters go? Did not I tell thee as much before? See now, whether we have not a kingdom which we may command, and a queen whom we may espouse."—"Ah, marry have you," replied Sancho, "and a pox take the son of a whore, I say, that will not wed and bed her majesty's grace as soon as master Pandafilando's wind-pipes are slit. Look what a dainty bit she is! ha! would I never had a worse flea in my bed!" With that, to shew his joy, he cut a couple of capers in the air; and turning to Dorothea, laid hold on her mule by the bridle, and flinging himself down on his knees, begged she would be graciously pleased to let him kiss her hand, in token of his owning her for his sovereign lady.

There was none of the beholders but was ready to burst for laughter, having a sight of the master's madness, and the servant's simplicity. In short, Dorothea was obliged to comply with his entreaties, and promised to make him a grandee, when fortune should favour her with the recovery of her lost kingdom. Whereupon Sancho gave her his thanks, in such a manner as obliged the company to a fresh

laughter. Then going on with her relation, "Gentlemen," said she, "this is my history ; and among all my misfortunes, this only has escaped a recital, that not one of the numerous attendants I brought from my kingdom has survived the ruins of my fortune, but this good squire with the long beard : the rest ended their days in a great storm, which dashed our ship to pieces in the very sight of the harbour ; and he and I had been sharers in their destiny, had we not laid hold of two planks, by which assistance we were driven to land, in a manner altogether miraculous, and agreeable to the whole series of my life, which seems, indeed, but one continued miracle. And if in any part of my relation I have been tedious, and not so exact as I should have been, you must impute it to what Master Curate observed to you, in the beginning of my story, that continual troubles oppress the senses, and weaken the memory."—"Those pains and afflictions, be they ever so intense and difficult," said Don Quixote, "shall never deter me, most virtuous and high-born lady, from adventuring for your service, and enduring whatever I shall suffer in it : and therefore I again ratify the assurances I have given you, and swear that I will bear you company, though to the end of the world, in search of this implacable enemy of yours, till I shall find him ; whose insulting head, by the help of heaven, and my own invincible arm, I am resolved to cut off, with the edge of this (I will not say good) sword ; a curse on Gines de Passamonte, who took away my own !" This he spoke murmuring to himself, and then pro-

secuted his discourse in this manner : " And after I have divided it from the body, and left you quietly possessed of your throne, it shall be left at your own choice to dispose of your person, as you shall think convenient : for as long as I shall have my memory full of her image, my will captivated, and my understanding wholly subjected to her, whom I now forbear to name, it is impossible I should in the least deviate from the affection I bear to her, or be induced to think of marrying, though it were a Phœnix."

The close of Don Quixote's speech, which related to his not marrying, touched Sancho so to the quick, that he could not forbear bawling out his resentments : " Body o' me, Sir Don Quixote," cried he, " you are certainly out of your wits, or how is it possible you should stick at striking a bargain with so great a lady as this ? Do you think, sir, fortune will put such dainty bits in your way at every corner ? Is my lady Dulcinea handsomer, do you think ? No, marry, is she not half so handsome : I could almost say she is not worthy to tie this lady's shoe-latchets. I am likely, indeed, to get the earldom I have fed myself with hopes of, if you spend your time in fishing for mushrooms in the bottom of the sea. Marry, marry out of hand, or Old Nick take you for me. Lay hold of the kingdom which is ready to leap into your hands ; and as soon as you are a king, e'en make me a marquis, or a peer of the land, and afterwards, let things go at sixes and sevens, it will be all a case to Sancho."—Don Quixote, quite divested of all patience, at the blasphemies

which were spoken against his lady Dulcinea, could bear with him no longer; and therefore, without so much as a word to give him notice of his displeasure, gave him two such blows with his lance, that poor Sancho measured his length on the ground, and had certainly there breathed his last, had not the knight desisted, through the persuasions of Dorothea. "Thinkest thou," said he, after a considerable pause, "most infamous peasant, that I shall always have leisure and disposition to put up thy affronts; and that thy whole business shall be to study new offences, and mine to give thee new pardons? Dost thou not know, excommunicated traitor, (for certainly excommunication is the least punishment can fall upon thee, after such profanations of the peerless Dulcinea's name,) and art thou not assured, vile slave and ignominious vagabond, that I should not have strength sufficient to kill a flea, did not she give strength to my nerves, and infuse vigour into my sinews? Speak, thou villain with the viper's tongue; who dost thou imagine has restored the queen to her kingdom, cut off the head of a giant, and made thee a marquis, (for I count all this as done already,) but the power of Dulcinea, who makes use of my arm as the instrument of her act in me? She fights and overcomes in me, and I live and breathe in her, holding life and being from her. Thou base-born wretch! art thou not possessed of the utmost ingratitude, thou who seest thyself exalted from the very dregs of the earth, to nobility and honour, and yet dost

repay so great a benefit with obloquies against the person of thy benefactress."

Sancho was not so mightily hurt, but he could hear what his master said well enough ; wherefore, getting upon his legs in all haste, he ran for shelter behind Dorothea's palfrey, and being got thither, "Hark you, sir," cried he to him, "if you have no thought of marrying this same lady, it is a clear case that the kingdom will never be yours ; and if it be not, what good can you be able to do me ? Then let any one judge whether I have not cause to complain. Therefore, good your worship, marry her once for all, now we have her rained down, as it were, from heaven to us, and you may after keep company with my lady Dulcinea ; for I guess you will not be the only king in the world that has kept a miss or two in a corner. As for beauty, do you see, I'll not meddle nor make ; for (if I must say the truth;) I like both the gentlewomen well enough in conscience ; though now I think on it, I have never seen the lady Dulcinea."—"How, not seen her, blasphemous traitor !" replied Don Quixote ; "when just now thou broughtest me a message from her !"—"I say," answered Sancho, "I have not seen her so leisurely as to take notice of her features and good parts one by one ; but yet, as I saw them at a blush, and all at once, methought I had no reason to find fault with them."—"Well, I pardon thee now," quoth Don Quixote, "and thou must excuse me for what I have done to thee ; for the first motions are not in our power."—"I perceive that well enough," said

Sancho, "and that is the reason my first motions are always in my tongue ; and I cannot for my life help speaking what comes uppermost."—"However, friend Sancho," said Don Quixote, "thou hadst best think before thou speakest ; for the pitcher never goes so oft to the well—I need say no more."—"Well, what must be must be," answered Sancho ; "there is somebody above who sees all, and will one day judge which has most to answer for, whether I for speaking amiss, or you for doing so."—"No more of this, Sancho," said Dorothea ; "but run and kiss your lord's hands, and beg his pardon ; and, for the time to come, be more advised and cautious how you run into the praise or dispraise of any person ; but especially take care you do not speak ill of that lady of Toboso, whom I do not know, though I am ready to do her any service ; and for your own part, trust in heaven ; for you shall infallibly have a lordship, which shall enable you to live like a prince." Sancho shrugged up his shoulders, and in a sneaking posture went and asked his master for his hand, which he held out to him with a grave countenance ; and after the squire had kissed the back of it, the knight gave him his blessing, and told him he had a word or two with him, bidding him come nearer, that he might have the better convenience of speaking to him. Sancho did as his master commanded, and going a little from the company with him ; "Since thy return," said Don Quixote, applying himself to him, "I have neither had time nor opportunity to inquire into the particulars of thy embassy, and the answer thou hast

brought ; and therefore, since fortune has now befriended us with convenience and leisure, deny me not the satisfaction thou mayest give me by the rehearsal of thy news."—"Ask what you will," cried Sancho, "and you shall not want for an answer ; but, good your worship, for the time to come, I beseech you, do not be too hasty."—"What occasion hast thou, Sancho, to make this request?" replied Don Quixote.—"Reason good enough, truly," said Sancho ; "for the blows you gave me even now, were rather given me on account of the quarrel which the devil stirred up between your worship and me the other night, than for your dislike of anything which was spoken against my lady Dulcinea."—"Pr'ythee, Sancho," cried Don Quixote, "be careful of falling again into such irreverent expressions ; for they provoke me to anger, and are highly offensive. I pardoned thee then for being a delinquent, but thou art sensible that a new offence must be attended with a new punishment."

As they were going on in such discourse as this, they saw at a distance a person riding up to them on an ass, who, as he came near enough to be distinguished, seemed to be a gypsey by his habit. But Sancho Panza, who, whenever he got sight of any asses, followed them with his eyes and his heart, as one whose thoughts were ever fixed on his own, had scarce given him half an eye, but he knew him to be Gines de Passamonte; and by the looks of the gipsey found out the visage of his ass ; as really it was the very same which Gines had got under him ; who, to conceal himself from the knowledge of the

public, and have the better opportunity of making a good market of his beast, had clothed himself like a gipsey ; the cant of that sort of people, as well as the languages of other countries, being as natural and familiar to them as their own. Sancho saw him and knew him ; and scarce had he seen and taken notice of him, when he cried out as loud as his tongue would permit him : “ Ah ! thou thief Genesillo, leave my goods and chattels behind thee : get off from the back of my own dear life : thou hast nothing to do with my poor beast, without whom I cannot enjoy a moment’s ease : away from my Dapple, away from my comfort ; take to thy heels, thou villain ; hence thou hedge bird, leave what is none of thine ! ” He had no occasion to use so many words ; for Gines dismounted as soon as he heard him speak, and taking to his heels, got from them, and was out of sight in an instant. Sancho ran immediately to his ass, and embraced him : “ How hast thou done,” cried he, “ since I saw thee, my darling and treasure, my dear Dapple, the delight of my eyes, and my dearest companion ? ” And then he stroaked and slabbered him with kisses, as if the beast had been a rational creature. The ass, for his part, was as silent as could be, and gave Sancho the liberty of as many kisses as he pleased, without the return of so much as one word to the many questions he had put to him. At sight of this the rest of the company came up with him, and paid their compliments of congratulation to Sancho, for the recovery of his ass, especially Don Quixote, who told him, that

though he had found his ass again, yet would not be revoke the warrant he had given him for three asses; for which favour Sancho returned him a multitude of thanks.

While they were travelling together, and discoursing after this manner, the curate addressed himself to Dorothea, and gave her to understand, that she had excellently discharged herself of what she had undertaken, as well in the management of the history itself, as in her brevity, and adapting her style to the particular terms made use of in books of knight-errantry. She returned for answer, that she had frequently conversed with such romances, but that she was ignorant of the situation of the provinces, and the sea-ports, which occasioned the blunder she had made, by saying that she landed at Ossuna. "I perceived it," replied the curate, "and therefore I put in what you heard, which brought matters to rights again. But is it not an amazing thing, to see how ready this unfortunate gentleman is to give credit to these fictitious reports, only because they have the air of the extravagant stories in books of knight-errantry?" Cardenio said, that he thought this so strange a madness, that he did not believe the wit of man, with all the liberty of invention and fiction, capable of hitting so extraordinary a character."—"The gentleman," replied the curate, "has some qualities in him, even as surprising in a madman, as his unparalleled frenzy: for, take him but off his romantic humour, discourse with him of any other subject, you will find him to handle it with a great deal of reason, and shew him-

self, by his conversation, to have very clear and entertaining conceptions : insomuch, that if knight-errantry bears no relation to his discourse, there is no man but will esteem him for his vivacity of wit, and strength of judgment." While they were thus dis coursing, Don Quixote, prosecuting his converse with his squire, " Sancho," said he, " let us lay aside all manner of animosity ; let us forget and forgive injuries ; \* and answer me as speedily as thou canst, without any remains of thy last displeasure, how, when, and where didst thou find my lady Dulcinea ? What was she doing when thou first paid'st thy respects to her ? How didst thou express thyself to her ? What answer was she pleased to make thee ? What countenance did she put on at the perusal of my letter ? Who transcribed it fairly for thee ? And every thing else which has any relation to this affair, without addition, lies or flattery. On the other side, take care thou losest not a tittle of the whole matter, by abbreviating it, lest thou rob me of part of that delight, which I propose to myself from it."—" Sir," answered Sancho, " if I must speak the truth, and nothing but the truth, nobody copied out the letter for me ; for I carried none at all."—" That's right," cried Don Quixote, " for I found the pocket-book, in which it was written, two days after thy departure, which occasioned exceeding grief in me, because I knew not what thou could'st

---

\* In the original Spanish it is,—*Echemos pelilos a la mar :*  
i. e. literally, let us throw small little hairs into the sea.

do, when thou found'st thyself without the letter ; and I could not but be induced to believe that thou would'st have returned, in order to take it with thee." — "I had certainly done so," replied Sancho, "were it not for this head of mine, which kept it in remembrance ever since your worship read it to me, and helped me to say it over to a parish-clerk, who writ it out for me word for word so purely, that he swore, though he had written out many a letter of excommunication in his time, he never in all the days of his life had read or seen any thing so well spoken as it was." — "And dost thou still retain the memory of it, my dear Sancho ?" cried Don Quixote. — "Not I," quoth Sancho ; "for as soon as I had given it her, and your turn was served, I was very willing to forget it. But if I remember any thing, it is what was on the top ; and it was thus : High and subterrene, I would say, sovereign lady : and at the bottom, yours until death, the Knight of the Woeful Figure ; and I put between these two things, three hundred souls and lives and pigsneys."

#### CHAPTER IV.

*The pleasant Dialogue between Don Quixote and his Squire, continued, with other Adventures.*

"ALL this is mighty well," said Don Quixote ; "proceed therefore : you arrived, and how was that queen of beauty then employed ? On - my

conscience, thou found'st her stringing of orient pearls, or embroidering some curious device in gold for me her captive knight; was it not so, my Sancho?"—"No faith," answered the squire, "I found her winnowing a parcel of wheat very seriously in the back-yard."—"Then," said the Don, "you may rest assured, that every corn of that wheat was a grain of pearl, since she did it the honour of touching it with her divine hand. Didst thou observe the quality of the wheat, was it not of the finest sort?"—"Very indifferent, I thought," said the squire.—"Well, this, at least, you must allow; it must make the finest whitest bread, if sifted by her white hands. But go on; when you delivered my letter, did she kiss it? Did she treasure it in her bosom, or what ceremony did she use worthy such a letter? How did she behave herself?"—"Why truly, sir," answered Sancho, "when I offered her the letter, she was very busy handling her sieve; 'and, pr'ythee honest friend,' said she, 'do so much as lay that letter down upon that sack there; I cannot read it till I have winnowed out what is in my hands.'"—"O unparalleled discretion!" cried Don Quixote; "she knew that a perusal required leisure, and therefore deferred it, for her more pleasing and private hours. But oh! my squire, while she was thus employed, what conference past? What did she ask about her knight, and what did you reply? Say all, say all, my dearest Sancho, let not the smallest circumstance escape the tongue; speak all that thought can frame, or pen describe."—"Her questions were easily answered, sir," said Sancho,

"for she asked me none at all: I told her indeed, in what a sad pickle I had left you for her sake, naked to the waist; that you eat and slept like the brute beasts; that you would let a razor as soon touch your throat as your beard; that you were still blubbering and crying, or swearing and cursing your fortune."—"There you mistook," replied Don Quixote, "I rather bless my fortune, and always shall, while life affords me breath, since I am thought to merit the esteem of so high a lady as Dulcinea del Toboso."—"There you hit it," said Sancho; "she is a high lady indeed, sir, for she is taller than I am by a foot and half."\*—"Why, how now, Sancho," said the knight, "hast thou measured with her!"—"Ah marry did I, sir," said the squire; "for you must know that she desired me to lend her a hand in lifting a sack of wheat on an ass; so we buckled about it, and I came so close to her, that I found she was taller than I by a full span at least."—"Right," answered Don Quixote; "but thou art also conscious that the uncommon stature of her person is adorned with innumerable graces and endowments of soul. But, Sancho, when you approached the charming she, did not an aromatic smell strike thy sense, a scent so odiferous, plea-

---

\* *Coto* in Spanish, which Sobrino says is but a handful, so says Stevens in his Dictionary, though he translates it in this place a cubit. Oudin says, it is the breadth of four fingers, and the height of the thumb when raised up in clenching the fist.

sing and sweet, that I want a name for it ; sweet as —— you understand me, as the richest fragtancy diffused around a perfumer's magazine of odours ? This, at least, you must grant me."—" I did indeed feel a sort of scent a little unsavoury," said Sancho, " somewhat vigorous or so ; for I suppose she had wrought hard, and sweat somewhat plentifully."—" It is false," answered the knight, " thy smelling has been debauched by thy own scent, or some canker in thy nose : if thou could'st tell the scent of opening roses, fragrant lilies, or the choicest anaber, then thou might'st guess at hers."—" Cry mercy, sir," said Sancho ; " it may be so indeed, for I remember that I myself have smelt very oft just as Madam Dulcinea did then ; and that she should smell like me, is no such wondrous thing neither, since there is never a barrel the better herring of us."—" But now," said the knight, " supposing this corn winnowed and dispatched to the mill, what did she after she had read my letter ?"—" Your letter, sir," answered Sancho, " your letter was not read at all, sir ; as for her part, she said, she could neither read nor write, and she would trust nobody else, lest they should tell tales, and so she cunningly tore your letter. She said, that what I told her by word of mouth of your love and penance was enough : to make short now, she gave her service to you, and said she had rather see you than hear from you ; and she prayed you, if ever you loved her, upon sight of me, forthwith to leave your madness among the bushes here, and come straight to Toboso (if you be at leisure,) for she has something

to say to you, and has a huge mind to see you : she had like to burst with laughing, when I called you the Knight of the Woeful Figure. She told me the Biscayan whom you mauled so was there, and that he was a very honest fellow ; but that she heard no news at all of the galley-slaves."

" Thus far all goes well," said Don Quixote ; " but tell me, pray, what jewel did she present you at your departure, as a reward for the news you brought ? for it is a custom of ancient standing among knights and ladies errant, to bestow on squires, dwarfs, or damsels, who bring them good news of their ladies or servants, some precious jewel as a grateful reward of their welcome tidings."— " Ah ! sir," said Sancho, " that was the fashion in the days of yore, and a very good fashion, I take it : but all the jewels Sancho got was a luncheon of bread and a piece of cheese, which she handed to me over the wall, when I was taking my leave, by the same token (I hope there's no ill luck in it,) the cheese was made of sheep's milk."—" It is strange," said Don Quixote, " for she is liberal, even to profuseness ; and if she presented thee not a jewel, she had certainly none about her at that time ; but what is deferred is not lost, sleeves are good after Easter.\* I shall see her, and matters shall be accommodated. Knowest thou, Sancho, what raises my astonishment ? it is thy sudden return ; for, proportioning

---

\* A proverbial expression, signifying that a good thing is always seasonable.

thy short absence to the length of thy journey, Tобoso being, at least, thirty leagues distant, thou must have ridden on the wind. Certainly the sagacious enchanter, who is my guardian and friend, (for doubtless such a one there is and ought to be, or I should not be a true knight-errant,) certainly, I say, that wise magician has furthered thee on thy journey unawares ; for there are sages of such incredible power, as to take up a knight-errant sleeping in his bed, and waken him next morning a thousand leagues from the place where he fell asleep. By this power knights-errant succour one another in their most dangerous exigents, when and where they please.—For instance, suppose me fighting in the mountains of Armenia, with some hellish monster, some dreadful sprite, or fierce gigantic knight, where perhaps I am like to be worsted (such a thing may happen,) when just in the very crisis of my fate, when I least expect it, I behold on the top of a flying cloud, or riding in a flaming chariot, another knight, my friend, who, but a minute before, was in England perhaps—he sustains me, delivers me from death, and returns that night to his own lodging, where he sups with a very good appetite after his journey, having rid you two or three thousand leagues that day ; and all this performed by the industry and wisdom of these knowing magicians, whose only business and charge is glorious knight-errantry. Some such expeditious power, I believe, Sancho, though hidden from you, has promoted so great a dispatch in your late journey.”—“I believe, indeed,” answered Sancho, “that there was witch-

craft in the case, for Rozinante went without spur all the way, and was as mettlesome as though he had been a gypsey's ass, with quicksilver in his ears."—"Quicksilver ! you coxcomb," said the knight, "ay, and a troop of devils besides ; and they are the best horse-courseters in nature, you must know, for they must needs go whom the devil drives ; but no more of that.—What is thy advice as to my lady's commands to visit her ? I know her power should regulate my will. But then my honour, Sancho, my solemm promise has engaged me to the princess's service that comes with us, and the law of arms confines me to my word. Love draws me one, and glory t'other way : on this side Dulcinea's strict commands, on the other my promised faith ; but——it is resolved. I'll travel night and day, cut off this giant's head, and, having settled the princess in her dominions, will presently return to see that sun which enlightens my senses. She will easily condescend to excuse my absence, when I convince her it was for her fame and glory ; since the past, present, and future success of my victorious arms, depends wholly on the gracious influences of her favour, and the honour of being her knight."—" Oh sad ! oh sad !" said Sancho ; " I doubt your worship's head is much the worse for wearing. Are you mad, sir, to take so long a voyage for nothing ? why don't you catch at this preferment that now offers, where a fine kingdom is the portion, twenty thousand leagues round, they say ; nay, bigger than Portugal and Castile both together. Good your worship, hold your tongue, I wonder you are not ashamed. Take a

fool's counsel for once, marry her by the first priest you meet ; here is our own curate can do the job most curiously.\* Come, master, I have hair enough in my beard to make a counsellor, and my advice is as fit for you as your shoe for your foot :—a bird in hand is worth two in the bush, and

He that will not when he may,  
When he would, he shall have nay."

"Thou advisest me thus," answered Don Quixote, "that I may be able to promote thee according to my promise ; but that I can do without marrying this lady ; for I shall make this the condition of entering into battle, that after my victory, without marrying the princess, she shall leave part of her kingdom at my disposal, to gratify whom I please ; and who can claim any such gratuity but thyself?"—"That's plain," answered Sancho ; "but pray, sir, take care that you reserve some part near the sea-side for me ; that if the air does not agree with me, I may transport my black slaves, make my profit of them, and go live somewhere else ; so that I would have you resolve upon it presently, leave the lady Dulcinea for the present, and go kill this same giant, and make an end of that business first ; for I dare swear it will yield you a good market."—"I am fixed in thy opinion," said Don Quixote ; "but I admonish thee not to whisper to any person the least

---

\* As if it was done with pearl, in the original : *lo harà de parlas*, i. e. to a nicety.

hint of our conference ; for since Duleinea is so cautious and secret, it is proper that I and mine should follow her example."—"Why the devil then," said Sancho, "should you send every body you overcome, packing to Madam Dulcinea, to fall down before her, and tell her, they came from you to pay their obedience, when this tells all the world that she is your mistress, as much as if they had it under your own hand?"—"How dull of apprehension and stupid thou art," said the knight ; "hast thou not sense to find that all this redounds to her greater glory? Know, that in proceedings of chivalry, a lady's honour is calculated from the number of her servants, whose services must not tend to any reward but the favour of her acceptance, and the pure honour of performing them for her sake, and being called her servants."—"I have heard our curate," answered Sancho, "preach up this doctrine of loving for love's sake, and that we ought to love our Maker so for his own sake, without either hope of good, or fear of pain : though, for my part, I would love and serve him for what I could get."—"Thou art an unaccountable fellow," cried Don Quixote ; "thou talkest sometimes with so much sense, that one would imagine thee to be something of a scholar."—"A scholar, sir?" answered Sancho, "lack-a-day, I do not know, as I am an honest man, a letter in the book."

Master Nicholas, seeing them so deep in discourse, called to them to stop and drink at a little fountain by the road. Don Quixote halted, and Sancho was very glad of the interruption, his stock of lies being

almost spent, and he stood in danger besides of being trapped in his words, for he had never seen Dulcinea, though he knew she lived at Toboso. Cardenio by this had changed his clothes for those Dorothea wore when they found her in the mountains ; and though they made but an ordinary figure, they looked much better than those he had put off.\* They all stopped at the fountain, and fell aboard the curate's provision, which was but a snap among so many, for they were all very hungry. While they sat refreshing themselves, a young lad, travelling that way, observed them, and, looking earnestly on the whole company, ran suddenly and fell down before Don Quixote, addressing him in a very doleful manner. " Alas ! good sir," said he, " don't you know me ? don't you remember poor Andrew, whom you caused to be untied from the tree ?" — With that the knight knew him ; and, raising him up, turned to the company : " That you may all know," said he, " of how great importance, to the redressing of injuries, punishing vice, and the universal benefit of mankind, the business of knight-errantry may be, you must understand, that, riding through a desert some days ago, I heard certain lamentable shrieks and outcries. Prompted by the misery of the afflicted, and borne away by the zeal of my profession, I followed the voice, and found this boy, whom you all see, bound to a great oak : I am glad he is present, because he can attest the truth of my

---

\* These must be the ragged apparel Cardenio wore before he was dressed in the priest's short cassock and cloak.

relation. I found him, as I told you, bound to an oak ; naked from the waist upwards, and a bloody-minded peasant scourging his back unmercifully with the reins of a bridle. I presently demanded the cause of his severe chastisement. The rude fellow answered, that he had liberty to punish his own servant, whom he thus used for some faults that argued him more knave than fool. ‘ Good sir,’ said the boy, ‘ he can lay nothing to my charge, but demanding my wages.’ His master made some reply, which I would not allow as a just excuse, and ordered him immediately to unbind the youth, and took his oath that he would take him home, and pay him all his wages upon the nail, in good and lawful coin.—Is not this literally true, Andrew? did you not mark, besides, with what face of authority I commanded, and with how much humility he promised to obey all I imposed, commanded, and desired? Answer me, boy; and tell boldly all that passed to this worthy company, that it may appear how necessary the vocation of knights-errant is up and down the high roads.”

“ All you have said is true enough,” answered Andrew; “ but the business did not end after that manner you and I hoped it would.”—“ How!” said the knight, “ has not the peasant paid you?”—“ Ay, he has paid me with a vengeance,” said the boy; “ for no sooner was your back turned, but he tied me again to the same tree, and lashed me so cursedly, that I looked like St Bartholomew flead alive; and at every blow he had some joke or another to laugh at you; and had he not laid me on as

he did, I fancy I could not have helped laughing myself. At last he left me in so pitiful a case, that I was forced to crawl to an hospital, where I have lain ever since to get cured, so wofully the tyrant had lashed me. And now, I may thank you for this, for had you rid on your journey, and neither meddled nor made, seeing nobody sent for you, and it was none of your business, my master, perhaps, had been satisfied with giving me ten or twenty lashes, and after that would have paid me what he owed me ; but you was so huffy, and called him so many names, that it made him mad, and so he vented all his spite against you upon my poor back, as soon as yours was turned, insomuch that I fear I shall never be mine own man again."—"The miscarriage," answered the knight, "is only chargeable on my departure before I saw my orders executed ; for I might by experience have remembered, that the word of a peasant is regulated, not by honour, but by profit. But you remember, Andrew, how I swore, if he disobeyed, that I would return and seek him through the universe, and find him, though hid in a whale's belly."—"Ah ! sir," answered Andrew, "but that's no cure for my sore shoulders."—"You shall be redressed," answered the knight, starting fiercely up, and commanding Sancho immediately to bridle Rozinante, who was baiting as fast as the rest of the company. Dorothea asked what he intended to do : he answered, that he intended to find out the villain, and punish him severely for his crimes, then force him to pay

Andrew his wages to the last maravedi,\* in spite of all the peasants in the universe. She then desired him to remember his engagements to her, which withheld him from any new achievement till that was finished ; that he must therefore suspend his resentments till his return from her kingdom. "It is but just and reasonable," said the knight ; "and therefore Andrew must wait with patience my return : but when I do return, I do hereby ratify my former oath and promise, never to rest till he be fully satisfied and paid."—"I dare not trust to that," answered Andrew ; "but if you will bestow on me as much money as will bear my charges to Seville, I shall thank your worship more than for all the revenge you tell me of. Give me a snap to eat, and a bit in my pocket, and so heaven be with you and all other knights-errant, and may they prove as arrant fools in their own business as they have been in mine."

Sancho took a crust of bread and a slice of cheese, and, reaching it to Andrew, "There, friend," said he, "there is something for thee ; on my word, we have all of us a share of thy mischance."—"What share ?" said Andrew.—"Why, the curst mischance of parting with this bread and cheese to thee ; for my head to a half-penny, I may live to want it ; for thou must know, friend of mine, that we, the squires of knights-errant, often pick our teeth without a dinner, and are subject to many other things, which

---

\* Near the value of a farthing.

are better felt than told." Andrew snatched at the provender, and, seeing no likelihood of any more, he made his leg and marched off. But, looking over his shoulder at Don Quixote, "Hark ye, you Sir Knight-errant," cried he, "if ever you meet me again in your travels, which I hope you never shall, though I were torn in pieces, do not trouble me with your plaguy help, but mind your own business; and so fare you well, with a curse upon you and all the knights-errant that ever were born."—The knight thought to chastise him, but the lad was too nimble for any there, and his heels carried him off, leaving Don Quixote highly incensed at his story, which moved the company to hold their laughter, lest they should raise his anger to a dangerous height.

## CHAPTER V.

*What befel Don Quixote and his Company at the Inn.*

WHEN they had eaten plentifully, they left that place, and travelled all that day and the next, without meeting any thing worth notice, till they came to the inn, which was so frightful a sight to poor Sancho, that he would willingly not have gone in, but could by no means avoid it. The inn-keeper, the hostess, her daughter, and Mariternes, met Don Quixote and his squire with a very hearty welcome.

The knight received them with a face of gravity and approbation, bidding them prepare him a better bed than their last entertainment afforded him. "Sir," said the hostess, "pay us better than you did then, and you shall have a bed for a prince."—And upon the knight's promise that he would, she promised him a tolerable bed, in the large room where he lay before. He presently undressed, and, being heartily crazed in body as well as in mind, he went to bed. He was scarcely got to his chamber, when the hostess flew suddenly at the barber, and, catching him by the beard, "On my life," said she, "you shall use my tail no longer for a beard: Pray, sir, give me my tail; my husband wants it to stick his thing into—his comb I mean, and my tail will I have, sir."—The barber held tug with her till the curate advised him to return it, telling him, that he might now undisguise himself, and tell Don Quixote, that after the galley-slaves had pillaged him, he fled to that inn; and if he should ask for the princess's squire, he should pretend that he was dispatched to her kingdom before her, to give her subjects an account of her arrival, and of the power she brought to free them all from slavery. The barber, thus schooled, gave the hostess her tail, with the other trinkets which he had borrowed, to decoy Don Quixote out of the desart. Dorothea's beauty, and Cardenio's handsome shape, surprised every body. The curate bespoke supper, and the host, being pretty secure of his reckoning, soon got them a tolerable entertainment. They would not disturb the knight, who slept very soundly, for his distemper wanted

rest more than meat ; but they diverted themselves with the hostess's account of his encounter with the carriers, and of Sancho's being tossed in a blanket. Don Quixote's unaccountable madness was the principal subject of their discourse ; upon which the curate insisting, and arguing it to proceed from his reading romances, the inn-keeper took him up.

"Sir," said he, "you cannot make me of your opinion ; for, in my mind, it is the pleasantest reading that ever was. I have now in the house two or three books of that kind, and some other pieces, that really have kept me, and many others, alive. In harvest time, a great many of the reapers come to drink here in the heat of the day, and he that can read best among us takes up one of these books, and all the rest of us, sometimes thirty or more, sit round about him, and listen with such pleasure, that we think neither of sorrow nor care. As for my own part, when I hear the mighty blows and dreadful battles of those knights-errant, I have half a mind to be one myself, and am raised to such a life and briskness, that I could frighten away old age. I could sit and hear them from morning till night."—"I wish you would, husband," said the hostess ; "for then we should have some rest ; for at all other times you are so out of humour, and so snappish, that we lead a hellish life with you."—"That is true enough," said Maritornes ; "and for my part, I think there are mighty pretty stories in those books, especially that one about the young lady who is hugged so sweetly by her knight under the orange-

tree, when the damsel watches lest somebody comes, and stands with her mouth watering all the while ; and a thousand such stories, which I would often forego my dinner and supper to hear."—" And what think you of this matter, young miss ?" said the curate to the inn-keeper's daughter.—" Alack-a-day, sir," said she, " I do not understand those things, and yet I love to hear them : but I do not like that frightful ugly fighting, that so pleases my father. Indeed, the sad lamentations of the poor knights, for the loss of their mistresses, sometimes makes me cry like any thing."—" I suppose, then, young gentlewoman," said Dorothea, " you will be tender-hearted, and will never let a lover die for you."—" I do not know what may happen as to that," said the girl ; " but this I know, that I will never give any body reason to call me tigress and lioness, and I do not know how many other ugly names, as those ladies are often called ; and I think they deserve yet worse, so they do ; for they can never have soul nor conscience, to let such fine gentlemen die or run mad for a sight of them. What signifies all their fiddling and coyness ? If they are civil women, why do not they marry them ; for that is all their knights would be at ?"—" Hold your prating, mistress," said the hostess, " how came you to know all this ? It is not for such as you to talk of these matters."—" The gentleman only asked me a question," said she, " and it would be uncivil not to answer him."—" Well," said the curate, " do me the favour, good landlord, to bring out these books, that I may have a sight of them."

" With all my heart," said the inn-keeper ; and with that, stepping to his chamber, he opened a little portmantle that shut with a chain, and took out three large volumes, with a parcel of manuscripts, in a fair legible letter. The title of the first was *Don Cirongilio of Thrace*; the second, *Felixmarte of Hircania*; and the third was the History of the great Captain Gonçalo Hernandes de Corduba, and the Life of Diego Garcia de Paredes, bound together.\* The curate, reading the title, turned to the barber, and told him, they wanted now Don Quixote's house-keeper and his niece. " I shall do as well with the books," said the barber, " for I can find the way to the back-yard, or to the chimney ; there is a good fire that will do their business."—" Business !" said the inn-keeper, " I hope you would not burn my books ?"—" Only two of them," said the curate ; " this same *Don Cirongilio*, and his friend *Felixmarte*."—" I hope, sir," said the host, " they are neither heretics nor flegmatics."—" Schismatics, you mean," said the barber.—" I mean so," said the inn-keeper ; " and if you must burn any, let it be this of Gonçalo Hernandes, and Diego Garcia ; for you should sooner burn one of my children than the others."—" These books, honest friend," said the curate, " that you appear so concerned for, are

---

\* There were such famous leaders as the Great Captain, who conquered Naples for King Ferdinand of Spain, and Diego Garcia before him. But romantic authors have added monstrous fables to their true actions.

senseless rhapsodies of falsehood and folly ; and this which you so despise is a true history, and contains a true account of two celebrated men. The first, by his bravery and courage, purchased immortal fame, and the name of the Great General, by the universal consent of mankind ; the other, Diego Garcia de Paredes, was of noble extraction, and born in Truxillo, a town of Estremadura, and was a man of singular courage, and of such mighty strength, that with one of his hands he could stop a mill-wheel in its most rapid motion ; and with his single force defended the passage of a bridge against a great army. Several other great actions are related in the memoirs of his life, but all with so much modesty and unbiassed truth, that they easily pronounce him his own historiographer ; and had they been written by any one else, with freedom and impartiality, they might have eclipsed your Hectors, Achilles's, and Orlando's, with all their heroic exploits."—"That's a fine jest, faith," said the inn-keeper ; " my father could have told you another tale, sir. Holding a mill-wheel ! why, is that such a mighty matter ? Odds fish, do but turn over a leaf of *Felixmarte* there ; you will find how with one single back-stroke he cut five swinging giants off by the middle, as if they had been so many bean-cods, of which the children make little puppet-friars ;\* and read how, at

---

\* Children, in Spain, make puppets, resembling friars, out of bean-cods, by breaking as much of the upper end as to discover part of the first bean, which is to represent the bald head, and letting the broken cod hang back like a cowl.

another time, he charged a most mighty and powerful army of above a million and six hundred thousand fighting men, all armed cap-a-pe, and routed them all like so many sheep. And what can you say of the worthy Cirongilio of Thrace ? who, as you may read there, going by water one day, was assaulted by a fiery serpent in the middle of the river ; he presently leaped nimbly upon her back, and, hanging by her scaly neck, grasped her throat fast with both his arms, so that the serpent, finding herself almost strangled, was forced to dive into the water to save herself, and carried the knight, who would not quit his hold, to the very bottom, where he found a stately palace, and such pleasant gardens, that it was a wonder ; and straight the serpent turned into a very old man, and told him such things as were never heard nor spoken. Now, a fig for your Great Captain, and your Diego Garcia."—Dorothea, hearing this, said softly to Cardenio, that the host was capable of making a second part to Don Quixote. "I think so too," cried Cardenio, "for it is plain he believes every tittle contained in those books ; nor can all the Carthusian friars in the world persuade him otherwise."—"I tell thee, friend," said the curate, "there were never any such persons as your books of chivalry mention, upon the face of the earth ; your Felixmarte of Hircania, and your Cirongilio of Thrace, are all but chimeras, and fictions of idle and luxuriant wits, who wrote them for the same reason that you read them, because they had nothing else to do."—"Sir," said the inn-keeper, "you must

angle with another bait, or you will catch no fish ;\* I know what's what, as well as another ; I can tell where my own shoe pinches me ; and you must not think, sir, to catch old birds with chaff. A pleasant jest, faith, that you should pretend to persuade me now that these notable books are lies and stories ! why, sir, are they not in print ? Are they not published according to order ? licensed by authority from the privy council ? And do you think that they would permit so many untruths to be printed, and such a number of battles and enchantments, to set us all a-madding ?"—“ I have told you already, friend,” replied the curate, “ that this is licensed for our amusement in our idle hours ; for the same reason that tennis, billiards, chess, and other recreations are tolerated, that men may find a pastime for those hours they cannot find employment for. Neither could the government foresee this inconvenience from such books, that you urge, because they could not reasonably suppose any rational person would believe their absurdities. And were this a proper time, I could say a great deal in favour of such writings ; and how, with some regulations, they might be made both instructive and diverting. But I design, upon the first opportunity, to communicate my thoughts on this head to some that may redress it. In the mean time, honest landlord, you may put

---

\* In the original, *A otro perro con esse hueso*, &c. i. e. To another dog with this bone.

up your books, and believe them true if you please, and much good may they do you. And I wish you may never halt of the same foot as your guest, Don Quixote."—"There's no fear of that," said the inn-keeper, "for I never design to turn knight-errant; because I find the customs that supported the noble order are quite out of doors."

About the middle of their discourse entered Sancho, who was very uneasy at hearing that knights-errant were out of fashion, and books of chivalry full of nothing but folly and fiction; he resolved, however, in spite of all their contempt of chivalry, still to stick by his master; and if his intended expedition failed of success, then to return to his family and plough. As the inn-keeper was carrying away the books, the curate desired his leave to look over those manuscripts which appeared in so fair a character; he reached them to him, to the number of eight sheets, on one of which there was written in a large hand, *The Novel of the Curious Impertinent*. "The title," said the curate, "promises something, perhaps it may be worth reading through."—"Your reverence," said the inn-keeper, "may be worse employed; for that novel has received the approbation of several ingenious guests of mine who have read it, and who would have begged it of me; but I would by no means part with it, till I deliver it to the owner of this portmanteau, who left it here with these books and papers; I may perhaps, see him again, and restore them honestly; for I am as much a Christian as my neighbours, though I am an inn-keeper."—"But I hope," said the curate,

"if it pleases me you will not deny me a copy of it."—"Nay, as to that matter," said the host, "we shall not fall out."—Cardenio having by this perused it a little, recommended it to the curate, and entreated him to read it for the entertainment of the company. The curate would have excused himself, by urging the unseasonable time of night, and that sleep was then more proper, especially for the lady. "A pleasant story," said Dorothea, "will prove the best repose for some hours to me; for my spirits are not composed enough to allow me to rest, though I want it, Master Nicholas;" and Sancho joined in the request.—"To please ye then, and satisfy my own curiosity," said the curate, "I will begin, if you will but give your attention."

## CHAPTER VI.

### *The Novel of the Curious Impertinent.*

ANSELMO and Lothario, considerable gentlemen of Florence, the capital city of Tuscany in Italy, were so eminent for their friendship, that they were called nothing but the Two Friends. They were both young and unmarried, of the same age and humour, which did not a little concur to the continuance of their mutual affection, though, of the two, Anselmo was the most amorously inclined, and Lothario the greater lover of hunting; yet they loved one another above all other considerations; and mutually quitted their own pleasure for

their friend's ; and their very wills, like the different motions of a well regulated watch, were always subservient to their unity, and still kept time with one another. Anselmo, at last, fell desperately in love with a beautiful lady of the same city ; so eminent for her fortune and family, that he resolved by the consent of his friend, (for he did nothing without his advice,) to demand her in marriage. Lothario was the person employed in this affair, which he managed with that address, that in few days he put his friend into possession of Camilla, for that was the lady's name ; and this so much to their satisfaction, that he received a thousand acknowledgments from both, for the equal happiness they derived from his endeavours. Lothario, as long as the nuptials lasted, was every day at Anselmo's, and did all he could to add to the sports and diversions of the occasion. But as soon as the new-married pair had received the congratulation of their friends, and the nuptial ceremonies were over, Lothario retired with the rest of their acquaintance, and forbore his visits, because he prudently imagined that it was not at all proper to be so frequent at his friend's house after marriage as before ; for though true friendship entirely banishes all suspicion and jealousy, yet the honour of a married man is of so nice and tender a nature, that it has been sometimes sullied by the conversation of the nearest relations, and therefore more liable to suffer from that of a friend. Anselmo observed this remissness of Lothario ; and, fond as he was of his wife, shewed by his tender complaints how much it

affected him. He told him, that if he could have believed he must also have left so dear a correspondence by marriage, as much as he loved, he would never have paid so great a price for the satisfaction of his passion ; and that he would never, for the idle reputation of a cautious husband, suffer so tender and agreeable a name to be lost, as that of the Two Friends, which, before his marriage, they had so happily obtained ; and therefore he begged him, if that were a term lawful to be used betwixt them two, to return to his former familiarity and freedom of conversation ; assuring him, that his wife's will and pleasure were entirely formed by his ; and that being acquainted with their ancient and strict friendship, she was equally surprised at so unexpected a change.

Lothario replied to these endearing persuasions of his friend, with such prudence and discretion, that he convinced him of the sincerity of his intentions in what he had done ; and so, in conclusion, they agreed that Lothario should dine twice a-week at his house, besides holidays. Yet Lothario's compliance with this resolution being only not to disoblige his friend, he designed to observe it no farther than he should find it consistent with Anselmo's honour, whose reputation was as dear to him as his own ; and he used to tell him, that the husband of a beautiful wife ought to be as cautious of the friends whom he carried home to her himself, as other female acquaintance and visitants. For a friend's or relation's house often renders the contrivance of those things easy and not suspected, which could not be compassed either in

the church, the markets, or at public entertainments and places of resort, which no man can entirely keep a woman from frequenting. To this Lothario said also, that every married man ought to have some friend to put him in mind of the defects of his conduct; for a husband's fondness many times makes him either not see, or at least, for fear of displeasing his wife, not command or forbid her what may be advantageous or prejudicial to his reputation. In all which, a friend's warning and advice might supply him with a proper remedy. But where shall we find a friend so qualified with wisdom and truth as Anselmo demands? I must confess I cannot tell, unless it were Lothario, whose care of his friend's honour made him so cautious as not to comply with his promised visiting days, lest the malicious observers should give a scandalous censure of the frequent admission of so well qualified a gentleman, both for his wit, fortune, youth and address, to the house of a lady of so celebrated a beauty as Camilla: for though his virtue was sufficiently known to check the growth of any malignant report, yet he would not suffer his friend's honour nor his own, to run the hazard of being called in question; which made him spend the greatest part of those days, he had by promise devoted to his friend's conversation, in other places and employments; yet excusing his absence so agreeably, that Anselmo could not deny the reasonableness of what he alleged. And thus the time passed away in pathetic accusations of want of love and friendship on one side, and plausible excuses on the other.

" I know very well," said Anselmo, walking one day in the fields with his friend, " that of all the favours and benefits for which heaven commands my gratitude, as the advantage of my birth, fortune, and nature, the greatest and most obliging is the gift of such a wife, and such a friend ; being both of you pledges of so great value, that though it is impossible for me to raise my esteem and love equal to your deserts, yet is no man capable of having a greater. And yet while I am in possession of all that can or usually does make a man happy, I live the most discontented life in the world. I am not able to tell you when my misery began, which now inwardly torments me with so strange, extravagant, and singular a desire, that I never reflect on it, but I wonder at myself, and condemn and curb my folly, and would fain hide my desires even from myself : and yet I have received no more advantage from this private confusion, than if I had published my extravagance to all the world. Since therefore it is evident that it will at last break out, dear Lothario, I would have it go no farther than thy known fidelity and secrecy ; for that and my own industry, which as my friend thou wilt turn to my assistance, will quickly, I hope, free me from the anguish it now gives me, and restore me that tranquillity of which my own folly has now deprived me."

Lothario stood in great suspense, unable to guess at the consequence of so strange and prolix an introduction. In vain he racked his imagination for the causes of his friend's affliction, the truth was

the last thing he could think of; but no longer to remain in doubt, he told Anselmo, that he did his friendship a particular injury, in not coming directly to the point in the discovery of his thoughts to him, since his counsels might enable him to support, and, perhaps, to lose or compass such importunate desires.

"It is very true," replied Anselmo; "and with that assurance I must inform you, that the desire that gives me so much pain, is to know whether Camilla be really as virtuous as I think her. Nor can this be made evident but by such a trial, that, like gold by the fire, the standard and degree of her worth be discovered. For, in my opinion, no woman has more virtue than she retains, after the force of the most earnest solicitations. *Casta est quam nemo rogavit*: and she only may be said to be chaste, who has withheld the force of tears, vows, promises, gifts, and all the importunities of a lover that is not easily denied: for where is the praise of a woman's virtue whom nobody has ever endeavoured to corrupt? Where is the wonder if a wife be reserved, when she has no temptation nor opportunity of being otherwise, especially if she have a jealous husband, with whom the least suspicion goes for a reality, and who therefore punishes the least appearance with death. Now I can never so much esteem her who owes her virtue merely to fear or want of opportunity of being false, as I would one who victoriously surmounts all the assaults of a vigorous and watchful lover, and yet retains her virtue entire and unshaken. These,

and many other reasons, which I could urge to strengthen my opinion, make me desire that my Camilla's virtue may pass through the fiery trial of vigorous solicitations and addresses, and these offered by a gallant, who may have merit enough to deserve her good opinion ; and if, as I am confident she will, she be able to resist so agreeable a temptation, I shall think myself the most happy man in the world, and attain to the height and utmost aim of my desires, and shall say, that a virtuous woman is fallen to my lot, of whom the wise man says, who can find her ? If she yields, I shall, at least, have the satisfaction of finding my opinion of women justified ; and not be imposed on by a foolish confidence, that abuses most men ; which consideration will be sufficient to make me support the grief I shall derive from so expensive an experiment. And assuring myself, that nothing which you can say can dissuade me from my resolution, I desire that you yourself, my dear friend, would be the person to put my design in execution. I will furnish you with opportunities enough of making your addresses, in which I would have you omit nothing you may suppose likely to prevail with, and work upon a woman of quality, who is modest, virtuous, reserved, and discreet by nature. The most prevailing reason that makes me choose you for this affair above all others, is, because if she should prove so frail, as to be overcome by addresses and importunities, the victory will not cost me so dear, since I am secured from your taking that advantage, of which another might make no scruple. And so.

my honour will remain untouched, and the intended injury a secret, in the virtue of thy silence ; for I know my friend so well, that death and the grave will as soon divulge my affairs. Wherefore, if you would give me life indeed, and deliver me from the most perplexing torment of doubt, you will immediately begin this amorous assault, with all that warmth, assiduity, and courage, I expect from that confidence I put in your friendship."

Lothario gave so great an attention to Anselmo's reasons, that he gave him no other interruption, than what we mentioned. But now, finding his discourse was at an end, full of amazement at the extravagance of the proposal, he thus replied: " Could I, my dear Anselmo, persuade myself that what you have said were any more than a piece of railing, I should not have been so long silent ; no, I should have interrupted you at the beginning of your speech. Sure you know neither yourself nor me, Anselmo, or you would never have employed me on such an affair, if you had not thought me as much altered from what I was, as you seem to be ; for as the poet has it, *usque ad aras* ; a true friend ought to desire nothing of his friend that is offensive to heaven. But should a man so far exert his friendship, as to deviate a little from the severity of religion, in compliance to his friend, no trifling motives can excuse the transgression, but such only as concern, at least, his friend's life and honour. Which therefore of these, Anselmo, is in danger, to warrant my undertaking so detestable a thing as

you desire? Neither, I dare engage. On the contrary, you would make me the assaulter of both, in which my own is included; for to rob you of your reputation, is to take away your life, since an infamous life is worse than death; and by making me the guilty instrument of this, as you would have me, you make me worse than a dead man, by the murder of my reputation. Therefore I desire you would hear with patience what I have to urge against your extravagant desire, and I shall afterwards hear your reply, without interruption."

Anselmo having promised his attention, Lothario proceeded in this manner. "In my opinion, you are not unlike the Moors, who are incapable of being convinced of the error of their religion, by scripture, speculative reasons, or those drawn immediately from the articles of our faith; and will yield to nothing but demonstrations, as evident as those of the mathematics, and which can as little be denied, as when we say, if from two equal parts, we take away two equal parts, the parts that remain are also equal. And when they do not understand this proposition, which they seldom do, we are obliged by operation, to make it yet more plain and obvious to their senses: and yet all this labour will at last prove ineffectual to the convincing them of the verities of our religion. The same must be my method with you, since your strange desire is so very foreign to all manner of reason, that I very much fear I shall spend my time and labour in vain, in endeavouring to convince you of your own folly, for I can afford it no other name.

Nay, did I not love you as I do, I should leave you to the prosecution of your own odd humour, which certainly tends to your ruin. But to lay your folly a little more open, you bid me, Anselmo, attempt a woman of honour, cautious of her reputation, and one who is not much inclined to love; for all these good qualifications you allowed her. If therefore you already know your wife is possessed of all these advantages of prudence, discretion, honour, and reservedness, what have you more to inquire after? And if you believe, as I myself do, that she will be impregnable to all my assaults; what greater and better names will you give her, than she already deserves? Either you pretend to think better of her, than really you do, or else you desire you know not what yourself. But then if you do not believe her as virtuous as you pretend, why would you put it to the trial, why do you not rather use her as you think she deserves? On the other hand, if she be as good as you profess you believe her, why would you go to tempt truth and goodness itself, without any reasonable prospect of advantage? For when the trial is over, she will be but the same virtuous woman she was before. Wherefore it is allowed that it is the effect of temerity, and want of reason, to attempt what is likely to produce nothing but danger and detriment to the undertaker, especially when there is no necessity for it, and when we may easily foresee the folly of the undertaking. There are but these motives to incite us to difficult attempts, religion, interest, or both together. The first makes the saints en-

deavour to lead angelic lives in these frail bodies. The second makes us expose ourselves to the hazards of long voyages and travels in pursuit of riches. The third motive is compounded of both, and prompts us to act as well for the honour of God, as for our own particular glory and interest ; as for example, the daring adventures of the valiant soldier, who, urged by his duty to God, his prince, and his country, fiercely runs into the midst of a dreadful breach, unterrified with any considerations of the danger that threatens him. These are things done every day, and let them be never so dangerous, they bring honour, glory, and profit, to those that attempt them. But by the project you design to reduce to an experiment, you will never obtain either the glory of heaven, profit, or reputation : for should the experiment answer your expectation, it will make no addition, either to your content, honour, or riches ; but if it disappoint your hopes, it makes you the most miserable man alive. And the imaginary advantage of no man's knowing your disgrace will soon vanish, when you consider, that to know it yourself, will be enough to supply you perpetually with all the tormenting thoughts in the world. A proof of this is what the famous poet Ludovico Tansilo, at the end of his first part of St Peter's Tears, says, in these words :

' Shame, grief, remorse in Peter's breast increase,  
Soon as the blushing morn his crime betrays.  
When most unseen, then most himself he sees,  
And with due horror all his soul surveys.

' For a great spirit needs no censuring eyes  
To wound his soul, when conscious of a fault ;  
But self-condemn'd and even self-punish'd lies,  
And dreads no witness like upbraiding thought.'

So that your boasted secrecy, far from alleviating your grief, will only serve to increase it; and if your eyes do not express it by outward tears, they will flow from your very heart in blood. So wept that simple doctor, who, as our poet tells us, made that experiment on the brittle vessel, which the more prudent Reynoldus excused himself from doing. This, indeed, is but a poetical fiction, but yet the moral which it enforces is worthy being observed and imitated. And accordingly I hope you will discover the strange mistake into which you would run, principally when you have heard what I have farther to say to you.

" Suppose, Anselmo, you had a diamond, as valuable, in the judgment of the best jewellers, as such a stone could be, would you not be satisfied with their opinion, without trying its hardness on the anvil? You must own, that should it be proof against your blows, it would not be one jot the more valuable than really it was before your foolish trial; but should it happen to break, as well it might, the jewel was then entirely lost, as well as the sense and reputation of the owner. This precious diamond, my friend, is your Camilla, for so she ought to be esteemed in all men's opinions as well as your own. Why then would you imprudently put her in danger of falling, since your trial will add no greater

value to her than she has already ? But if she should prove frail, reflect with yourself on the unhappiness of your condition, and how justly you might complain of your being the cause of both her ruin and your own. Consider, that as a modest and honest woman is the most valuable jewel in the world, so all women's virtue and honour consist in the opinion and reputation they maintain with other people ; and since that of your wife is perfect, both in your own and all other men's opinion, why will you go, to no purpose, to call the reality of it in question ? you must remember, my friend, that the nature of women is, at best, but weak and imperfect ; and for that reason we should be so far from casting rubs in its way, that we ought, with all imaginable care, to remove every appearance that might hinder its course to that perfection it wants, which is virtue.

"If you believe the naturalists, the ermine is a very white little creature ; when the hunters have found its haunts, they surround it almost with dirt and mire, towards which the ermine being forced to fly, rather than sully its native white with dirt, it suffers itself to be taken, preferring its colour to its liberty and life. The virtuous woman is our ermine, whose chastity is whiter than snow ; but to preserve its colour unsullied, you must observe just a contrary method : the addresses and services of an importunate lover, are the mire into which you should never drive a woman ; for it is ten to one she will not be able to free herself and avoid it, being but too apt to stumble into it ; and therefore that should be always removed, and only the candour and

beauty of virtue, and the charms of a good fame and reputation placed before her. A good woman is also not unlike a mirror of crystal, which will infallibly be dimmed and stained by breathing too much upon it : she must rather be used like the reliques of saints, adored but not touched ; or like a garden of curious tender flowers, that may at a distance gratify the eye, but are not permitted by the master to be trampled on or touched by every beholder. I shall add but a few verses out of a late new play, very fit for our present purpose, where a prudent old man advised his neighbour, that had a daughter, to lock her up close ; and gives these reasons for it, besides several others :

‘ Since nothing is frailer than woman and glass,  
He that would expose them to fall is an ass ;  
And sure the rash mortal is yet more unwise,  
Who on bodies so ticklish experiments tries.  
With ease both are damaged ; then keep that with care  
Which no art can restore, nor no solder repair.  
Fond man, take my counsel, watch what is so frail ;  
For, where Danaes lie, golden showers will prevail.’

“ All I have hitherto urged relates only to you ; I may now at last be allowed to consider what regards myself, and if I am tedious, I hope you will pardon me ; for, to draw you out of the labyrinth into which you have run yourself, I am forced on that prolixity. You call me friend, yet, which is absolutely inconsistent with friendship, you would rob me of my honour ; nay, you stop not here, but would oblige me to destroy yours. First, that you would rob me

of mine is evident ; for what will Camilla think, when I make a declaration of love to her, but that I am a perfidious villain, that makes no scruple of violating the most sacred laws of friendship, and who sacrifices the honour and reputation of my friend to a criminal passion. Secondly, that I destroy yours is as evident ; for, when she sees me take such a liberty with her, she will imagine that I have discovered some weakness in her, that has given me assurance to make her so guilty a discovery, by which she, esteeming herself injured in her honour, you being the principal part of her, must of necessity be affected with the affronts she receives. For this is the reason why the husband, though never so deserving, cautious, and careful, suffers the infamy of a scandalous name if his wife goes astray ; whereas, in reason, he ought rather to be an object of compassion than contempt, seeing the misfortune proceeds from the vice and folly of the wife, not his own defects. But since the reason and justice of the man's suffering for the wife's transgression may be serviceable to you, I'll give you the best account of it I can ; and pray, do not think me tedious, since this is meant for your good. When woman was given to man, and marriage first ordained in paradise, man and wife were made and pronounced one flesh ; the husband, therefore, being of a piece with the wife, whatever affects her affects him, as a part of her ; though, as I have said, he has been no occasion of it : for, as the whole body is affected by the pain of any part, as the head will share the pain of the foot,

though it never caused that pain, so is the husband touched with his wife's infamy, because she is part of him. And since all worldly honours and dishonours are derived from flesh and blood, and the scandalous baseness of an unfaithful wife proceeds from the same principle, it necessarily follows, that the husband, though no party in the offence, and entirely ignorant and innocent of it, must have his share of the infamy. Let what I have said, my dear Anselmo, make you sensible of the danger into which you would run, by endeavouring thus to disturb the happy tranquillity and repose that your wife at present enjoys ; and for how vain a curiosity, and extravagant a caprice, you would rouse and awake those peccant humours which are now lulled asleep by the power of an unattempted chastity. Reflect farther, how small a return you can expect from so hazardous a voyage, and such valuable commodities as you venture ; for the treasure you will lose is so great, and ought to be so dear, that all words are too expressive to shew how much you ought to esteem it. But if all I have said be too weak to destroy your foolish resolve, employ some other instrument of your disgrace and ruin : for, though I should lose your friendship, a loss which I must esteem the greatest in the world, I will have no hand in an affair so prejudicial to your honour."

Lothario said no more ; and Anselmo, discovering a desponding melancholy in his face, remained a great while silent and confounded. At last, " I have," said he, " my friend, listened to your discourse, as you might observe, with all the attention

in nature, and every part of what you have said convinces me of the greatness of your wisdom and friendship ; and I must own, that if I suffer my desires to prevail over your reasons, I shun the good and pursue the evil. But yet, my friend, you ought, on the other side, to reflect, that my distemper is not much unlike that of those women, who sometimes long for coals, lime, nay, some things that are loathsome to the very sight ; and therefore, some little arts should be used to endeavour my cure, which might easily be effected, if you would but consent to solicit Camilla, though it were but weakly and remissly ; for I am sure she will not be so frail as to surrender at the first assault, which yet will be sufficient to give me the satisfaction I desire ; and in this you will fulfil the duty of our friendship, in restoring me to life, and securing my honour, by your powerful and persuasive reasons. And you are indeed bound as my friend to do thus much to secure me from betraying my defects and follies to a stranger, which would hazard that reputation which you have taken so much pains to preserve ; since I am so bent on this experiment, that, if you refuse me, I shall certainly apply myself elsewhere : and though a while your reputation may suffer in Camilla's opinion, yet, when she has once proved triumphant, you may cure that wound, and recover her good opinion, by a sincere discovery of your design. Wherefore, I conjure you to comply with my importunity, in spite of all the obstacles that may present themselves to you, since what I desire is so little, and the pleasure I shall derive from it so

great ; for, as I have promised, your very first attempt shall satisfy me as much as if you had gone through the whole experiment."

Lothario plainly saw that Anselmo's resolution was too much fixed for any thing he could say to alter it, and finding that he threatened to betray his folly to a stranger, if he persisted in a refusal, to avoid greater inconveniences, he resolved to seem to comply with his desires, privately designing to satisfy Anselmo's caprice, without giving Camilla any trouble ; and therefore he desired him to break the matter to nobody else, since he would himself undertake it, and begin as soon as he pleased. Anselmo embraced him with all the love and tenderness imaginable, and was as prodigal of his thanks, as if the very promise had been the greatest obligation that could be laid on him. They immediately agreed on the next day for the trial, at which time Anselmo should give him the opportunity of being alone with her, and gold and jewels to present her with. He advised him to omit no point of gallantry, as serenades and songs, and verses in her praise ; offering to make them himself, if Lothario would not be at the trouble. But Lothario promised him to do all himself, though his design was far different from Anselmo's.

Matters being thus adjusted, they returned to Anselmo's house, where they found the beautiful Camilla sad with concern for the absence of her husband beyond his usual hour. Lothario left him there, and retired home, as pensive how to come off handsomely in this ridiculous affair, as he had left

Anselmo pleased and contented with his undertaking it. But that night, he contrived a way of imposing on Anselmo to his satisfaction, without offending Camillo. So next day he goes to Anselmo's, and was received by Camilla with a civility and respect answerable to the uncommon friendship she knew was between him and her husband. Dinner being over, Anselmo desired his friend to keep his lady company till his return from an extraordinary affair, that would require his absence about an hour and a half. Camilla desired him not to go ; Lothario offered to go with him ; but he pleaded peculiar business, entreated his friend to stay, and enjoined his wife not to leave him alone till his return. In short, he knew so well how to counterfeit a necessity for his absence, though that necessity proceeded from his own folly, that no one could perceive it was feigned. And so he left them together, without any one to observe their actions, all the servants being retired to dinner.

Thus Lothario found himself entered the lists, his adversary before him terribly armed with a thousand piercing beauties, sufficient to overcome all the men she should encounter, which gave him cause enough to fear his own fate. The first thing he did in this first onset, was to lean his head carelessly on his hand, and beg her leave to take a nap in his chair, till his friend came back ; Camilla told him she thought he might rest with more ease on the couch\*

---

\* *Estrado*. A space of the visiting-rooms of ladies, raised a foot above the floor of the rest of the room, covered with car-

in the next room ; he declared himself satisfied with the place where he was, and so slept till his friend came back. Anselmo finding his wife in her chamber, and Lothario asleep at his return, concluded that he had given them time enough both for discourse and repose ; and therefore waited with a great deal of impatience for his friend's awaking, that they might retire, and he might acquaint him with his success. Lothario at last awaked, and going out with his friend, he answered his inquiry to this purpose, that he did not think it convenient to proceed farther, at that time, than some general praise of her wit and beauty, which would best prepare his way for what he might do hereafter, and dispose her to give a more easy and willing ear to what he should say to her : as the devil, by laying a pleasing and apparent good at first before us, insinuates himself into our inclinations so that he generally gains his point before we discover the cloven foot, if his disguise pass on us in the beginning. Anselmo was extremely satisfied with what Lothario said, and promised him every day as good an opportunity ; and though he could not go every day abroad, yet he would manage his conduct so well, that Camilla should have no cause of suspicion. He took care to do as he said. But Lothario wilfully lost the frequent opportunities he gave him ; however, he soothed him still with assurances, that his lady was inflexi-

---

pets or mats, on which the ladies sit on cushions laid along by the wall, or low stools ; being a Moorish fashion retained by the Spaniards.

ble, her virtue not to be surmounted, and that she had threatened to discover his attempts to her husband, if ever he presumed to be so insolent again ; so far was she from giving the least hope of encouragement. "Thus far it is well," said Anselmo ; "but yet Camilla has resisted nothing but words, we must now see what proof she is against more substantial temptations. To-morrow I will furnish you with two thousand crowns in gold, to present her with ; and as a farther bait you shall have as much more for jewels. For women, especially if they are handsome, naturally love to go gaily and richly dressed, be they never so chaste and virtuous ; and if she have power to overcome this temptation, I will give you no farther trouble."—"Since I have begun this adventure," replied Lothario, "I will make an end of it, though I am sure her repulses will tire out my patience, and her virtue overcome any temptation, and baffle my endeavours."

The next day Anselmo delivered him the four thousand crowns, and with them as many perplexing thoughts, not knowing how to supply his invention with some new story to amuse his friend. However, at last he resolved to return the money, with assurance that Camilla was as unmoved with presents as with praise, and as untouched with promises as with vows and sighs of love ; and therefore all farther attempts would be but a fruitless labour. This was his intention ; but fortune, that meddled too much in these affairs, disappointed his designs. For Anselmo having left him alone with his wife one day as he used to do, privately conveyed himself into

the closet, and through the chinks of the door set himself to observe what they did. He found that for one half hour Lothario said not one word to Camilla, from whence he concluded that all the addresses, importunities, and repulses, with which he had amused him, were pure fictions. But, that he might be fully satisfied in the truth of his surmise, coming from his covert he took his friend aside, and inquired of him what Camilla had then said to him, and how he now found her inclined? Lothario replied, that he would make no further trial of her, since her answer had now been so severe and awful, that he durst not for the future venture upon a discourse so evidently her aversion.

"Ah! Lothario, Lothario!" cried Anselmo, "is it thus that you keep your promises? is this what I should expect from your friendship? I observed you through that door, and found that you said not a word to Camilla; and from thence I am very well satisfied, that you have only imposed on me all the answers and relations you have made. Why did you hinder me from employing some other, if you never intended to satisfy my desire?" Anselmo said no more, but this was enough to confound Lothario, and cover him with shame for being found in a lie. Therefore to appease his friend, he swore to him, from that time forward, to set in good earnest about the matter, and that so effectually, that he himself, if he would again give himself the trouble of observing him, should find proof enough of his sincerity. Anselmo believed him; and to give him the better opportunity, he engaged a friend of his to send for

him, with a great deal of importunity, to come to his house at a village near the city, where he meant to spend eight days, to take away all apprehension and fear from both his friend and his wife.

Was ever man so unhappy as Anselmo, who industriously contrived the plot of his own ruin and dishonour? he had a very good wife, and possessed her in quiet, without any other man's mingling in his pleasures; her thoughts were bounded with her own house, and her husband, the only earthly good she hoped or thought on, and her only pleasure and desire; his will the rule of hers, and measure of her conduct. When he possessed love, honour, beauty and discretion, without pain or toil, what should provoke him to seek with so much danger and hazard of what he had already, that which was not to be found in nature! He that aims at things impossible, ought justly to lose those advantages which are within the bounds of possibility, as the poet sings:

## I.

" In death I seek for life,  
In a disease for health,  
For quietness in strife,  
In poverty for wealth,  
And constant truth in an inconstant wife.

## II.

" But sure the fates disdain  
My mad desires to please,  
Nor shall I e'er obtain  
What others get with ease,  
Since I demand what no man e'er could gain."

The next day Anselmo went out of town; having first informed Camilla, that his friend Lothario would look after his affairs, and keep her company in his absence, and desired her to make as much of him as of himself. His lady, like a discreet woman, begged him to consider how improper a thing it was for any other to take his place in his absence; and told him, that if he doubted her ability in managing her house, he should try her but this time, and she questioned not but he would find she had capacity to acquit herself to his satisfaction in greater matters. Anselmo replied, that it was her duty not to dispute, but obey his command: to which she returned, that she would comply, though much against her will. In short, her husband left the town; Lothario, the next day, was received at her house with all the respect that could be paid a friend so dear to her husband; but yet with so much caution, that she never permitted herself to be left alone with him, but kept perpetually some of her maids in the room, and chiefly Leonela, for whom she had a particular love, as having been bred in her father's house with her from her infancy.

Lothario said nothing to her the three first days, notwithstanding he might have found an opportunity when the servants were gone to dinner; for though the prudent Camilla had ordered Leonela to dine before her, that she might have no occasion to go out of the room; yet she, who had other affairs to employ her thoughts, more agreeable to her inclinations (to gratify which that was usually the only

convenient time she could find) was not so very punctually obedient to her lady's commands, but that she sometimes left them together. Lothario did not yet make use of these advantages, as I have said, being awed by the virtue and modesty of Camilla. But this silence which she thus imposed on Lothario, had at last a quite contrary effect. For though he said nothing, his thoughts were active, his eyes were employed to see and survey the outward charms of a form so perfect, that it was enough to fire the most cold, and soften the most obdurate heart. In these intervals of silence, he considered how much she deserved to be beloved; and these considerations by little and little undermined and assaulted the faith which he owed to his friend. A thousand times he resolved to leave the city and retire where Anselmo should never see him, and where he should never more behold the dangerous face of Camilla; but the extreme pleasure he found in seeing her, soon destroyed so feeble a resolve. When he was alone, he would accuse his want of friendship and religion, and run into frequent comparisons betwixt himself and Anselmo, which generally concluded that Anselmo's folly and madness was greater than his breach of faith; and that, would heaven as easily excuse his intentions as man, he had no cause to fear any punishment for the crime he was going to commit. In fine, Camilla's beauty, and the opportunity given him by the husband himself, wholly vanquished his faith and friendship.... And now, having an eye only to the means of obtaining that pleasure, to which he was prompted with so much

violence ; after he had spent the three first days of Anselmo's absence, in a conflict betwixt love and virtue, he attempted, by all means possible, to prevail with Camilla, and discovered so much passion in his words and actions, that Camilla, surprised with the unexpected assault, flung from him out of the room, and retired with haste to her chamber. Hope is always born with love, nor did this repulse in the least discourage Lothario from farther attempts on Camilla, who by this appeared more charming, and more worthy his pursuit. She, on the other hand, knew not what to do upon the discovery of that in Lothario, which she never could have imagined. The result of her reflections was this, that since she could not give him any opportunity of speaking to her again, without the hazard of her reputation and honour, she would send a letter to her husband to solicit his return to his house. The letter she sent by a messenger that very night ; and it was to this purpose.

## CHAPTER VII.

*In which the History of the Curious Impertinent is pursued.*

" As it is very improper to leave an army without a general, and a garrison without its governor ; so to me it seems much more imprudent to leave a young married woman without her husband ; es-

pecially when there are no affairs of consequence to plead for his absence. I find myself so ill in your's, and so impatient, and unable to endure it any longer, that if you come not home very quickly, I shall be obliged to return to my father's, though I leave your house without any one to look after it: for the person to whom you have entrusted the care of your family, has, I believe, more regard to his own pleasure than your concerns. You are wise and prudent, and therefore I shall say no more, nor is it convenient I should."

Anselmo was not a little satisfied at the receipt of this letter, which assured him that Lothario had begun the attempt, which she had repelled according to his hopes; and therefore he sent her word not to leave his house, assuring her it should not be long before he returned. Camilla was surprised with his answer, and more perplexed than before, being equally afraid of going to her father, and of staying at home; in the first she disobeyed her husband, in the latter ran the risk of her honour. The worst resolution prevailed, which was to stay at her own house, and not avoid Lothario's company, lest it should give some cause of suspicion to her servants. And now she repented her writing to Anselmo, lest he should suspect that Lothario had observed some indiscretion in her, that made him lose the respect due to her, and gave him assurance to offer at the corrupting her virtue; but confiding in heaven and her own innocence, which she thought proof against all Lothario's attempts, she resolved to make no answer to whatever he should say to her,

and never more trouble her husband with complaints, for fear of engaging him in disputes and quarrels with his friend. For that reason she considered how she might best excuse him to Anselmo, when he should examine the cause of her writing to him in that manner. With a resolution so innocent and dangerous, the next day she gave ear to all that Lothario said: and he gave the assault with such force and vigour, that Camilla's constancy could not stand the shock unmoved, and her virtue could do no more than guard her eyes from betraying that tender compassion, of which his vows and entreaties, and all his sighs and tears, had made her heart sensible. Lothario discovered this with an infinite satisfaction, and no less addition to his flame; and found that he ought to make use of this opportunity, of Anselmo's absence, with all his force and importunity to win so valuable a fortress. He began with the powerful battery of the praise of her beauty, which being directly pointed on the weakest part of woman, her vanity, with the greatest ease and facility in the world makes a breach as great as a lover would desire. Lothario was not unskilful or remiss in the attack, but followed his fire so close, that let Camilla's integrity be built on never so obdurate a rock, it must at last have fallen. He wept, prayed, flattered, promised, swore, vowed, and shewed so much passion and truth in what he said, that beating down the care of her honour, he, at last, triumphed over what he scarce durst hope, though what he most of all desired; for she, at last, surrendered, even Camilla surrendered! Not ought we to

wonder if she yielded, since even Lothario's friendship and virtue were not able to withstand the terrible assault ; an evident proof that love is a power too strong to be overcome by any thing but flying, and that no mortal creature ought to be so presumptuous as to stand the encounter, since there is need of something more than human, and indeed a heavenly force, to confront and vanquish that human passion. Leonela was the only confidante of this amour, which these new lovers and faithless friends could not by any means conceal from her knowledge. Lothario would not discover to Camilla, that her husband, for her trial, had designedly given him this opportunity, to which he owed so extreme a happiness ; because she should not think he wanted love to solicit her himself with importunity, or that she was gained on too easy terms.

Anselmo came home in a few days, but discovered not what he had lost, though it was what he most valued and esteemed : from thence he went to Lothario, and embracing him, begged of him to let him know his fate. " All I can tell you, my friend," answered Lothario, " is that you may boast yourself of the best wife in the world, the ornament of her sex, and the pattern which all virtuous women ought to follow. Words, offers, presents, all is ineffectual ; the tears I pretended to shed, moved only her laughter. Camilla is not only mistress of the greatest beauty, but of modesty, discretion, sweetness of temper, and every other virtue and perfection, that add to the charms of a woman of honour. Therefore, my friend, take back your money ; I have had no occasion to lay it out, for

Camilla's integrity cannot be corrupted by such base and mercenary things as gifts and promises. And now, Anselmo, be at last content with the trial you have already made ; and having so luckily got over the dangerous quick-sands of doubts and suspicions that are to be met with in the ocean of matrimony, do not venture out again, with another pilot, that vessel, whose strength you have sufficiently experienced ; but believe yourself, as you are, securely anchored in a safe harbour, at pleasure and ease, till death, from whose force, no title, power nor dignity can secure us, does come and cut the cable."

Anselmo was extremely satisfied with Lothario's discourse, and believed it as firmly as if it had been an oracle ; yet desired him to continue his pursuit, if it were but to pass away the time : he did not require he should press Camilla with those importunities he had before used, but only make some verses in her praise, under the name of Cloris ; and he would make Camilla believe he celebrated a lady he loved, under that name, to secure her honour and reputation from the censure which a more open declaration would expose her to ; he added, that if Lothario would not be at the expence of so much trouble and time, as to compose them himself, he would do it for him with a great deal of pleasure. Lothario told him there was no need of that, since he himself was sometimes poetically given ; " do you but tell Camilla of my pretended love, as you say you will, and I will make the verses as well as I can, though not so well as the excellency of the subject requires."

The curious impertinent, and his treacherous

friend, having thus agreed the matter, Anselmo went home, and then asked Camilla on what occasion she sent him the letter? Camilla, who wondered that this question had not been asked her before, replied, that the motive that prevailed with her to write in that manner to him, was a jealousy she had entertained, that Lothario, in his absence, looked on her with more criminal and desiring eyes than he used to do when he was at home; but that since she had reason to believe that suspicion but weakly grounded, seeing he discovered rather an aversion than love, as avoiding all occasions of being alone with her. Anselmo told her she had nothing to apprehend from Lothario on that account, since he knew his affections engaged on one of the noblest young ladies of the city, whose praise he writ under the name of Cloris; but were he not thus engaged, there was no reason to suspect Lothario's virtue and friendship. Camilla, at this discourse, without doubt, would have been very jealous of Lothario, had he not told her his design of abusing her husband, with the pretence of another love, that he might, with the greater liberty and security, express her praise and his passion. The next day, at dinner, Anselmo desired him to read some of the verses he had made on his beloved Cloris; telling him, he might say any thing of her before Camilla, since she did not know who the lady was. "Did Camilla know her," replied Lothario, "that should not make me pass over in silence any part of that praise which was her due; for if a lover complains of his mistress's cruelty, while he is praising her perfec-

tions, she can never suffer in her reputation. Therefore, without any fear, I shall repeat a sonnet which I made yesterday on the ingratitude of Cloria."

### A SONNET.

" At dead of night, when every troubled breast  
 By balmy sleep is eased of anxious pain,  
 When slaves themselves, in pleasing dreams are blest,  
 Of heaven and Cloris, restless I complain.  
 The rosy morn dispels the shades of night,  
 The sun, the pleasures, and the day return ;  
 All nature's cheer'd with the reviving light ;  
 I, only I, can never cease to mourn.  
 At noon, in vain, I bid my sorrow cease,  
 The heat increases, and my pains increase,  
 And still my soul in the mild evening grieves :  
 The night returns, and my complaints renew,  
 No moment sees me free ; in vain I sue,  
 Heaven ne'er relents, and Cloris ne'er relieves."

Camilla was mightily pleased with the sonnet, but Anselmo transported ; he was lavish of his commendation, and added that the lady must be barbarously cruel that made no return to so much truth, and so violent a passion. " What, must we then believe all that a poet in love tells us for truth ?" said Camilla.—" Madam," replied Lothario, " though the poet may exceed, yet the lover corrects his fondness for fiction, and makes him speak truth." Anselmo, to advance Lothario's credit with Camilla, confirmed whatever he said ; but she not minding her husband's confirmations, was sufficiently persuaded, by her passion for Lothario, to an implicit faith in all he said ; and therefore pleased with this composition,

and more satisfied in the knowledge she had that all was addressed to herself, as the true Cloris, she desired him to repeat some other verses he had made on that subject, if he could remember any. "I remember some," replied Lothario; "but, madam, in my opinion, they are not so tolerable as the former; but you shall judge yourself."

#### A SONNET.

##### I.

" I die your victim, cruel fair ;  
And die without reprieve,  
If you can think your slave can bear  
Your cruelty, and live.

##### II.

" Since all my hopes of ease are vain,  
To die I now submit ;  
And that you may not think I feign ;  
It must be at your feet.

##### III.

" Yet when my bleeding heart you view,  
Bright nymph, forbear to grieve ;  
For I had rather die for you,  
Than for another live.

##### IV.

" In death and dark oblivion's grave,  
Oh ! let me lie forlorn,  
For my poor ghost would pine and rave,  
Should you relent and mourn."

Anselmo was not less profuse in his praise of this sonnet, than he had been of the other, and so added new fuel to the fire that was to consume his reputation. He contributed to his own abuse, in commanding his false friend's attempts on his honour, as the most important service he could do it; and this

made him believe, that every step Camilla made down to contempt and disgrace, was a degree she mounted towards that perfection of virtue which he desired she should attain.

Some time after, Camilla being alone with her maid, "I am ashamed," said she, "my Leonela, that I gave Lothario so easy a conquest over me, and did not know my own worth enough to make him undergo some greater fatigues, before I made him so entire a surrender. I am afraid he will think my hasty consent the effect of the looseness of my temper, and not at all consider that the force and violence he used, deprived me of the power of resisting."—"Ah! madam," returned Leonela, "let not that disquiet you; for the speedy bestowing a benefit of an intrinsic value, and which you design to bestow at last, can never lessen the favour; for according to the proverb, He that gives quickly gives twice."—"To answer your proverb with another," replied Camilla, "That which cost little is less valued."—"But this has nothing to do with you," answered Leonela, "since it is said of love that it sometimes goes, sometimes flies; runs with one, walks gravely with another; turns a third into ice, and sets a fourth into a flame; it wounds one, another it kills: like lightning, it begins and ends in the same moment: it makes that fort yield at night which is besieged but in the morning; for there is no force able to resist it. Since this is evident, what cause have you to be surprised at your own frailty? And why should you apprehend any thing from Lothario, who has felt the same irresistible power, and yielded to it as soon? For love, to gain a conquest, took the short oppor-

tunity of my master's absence, which being so short and uncertain, love, that had before determined this should be done, added force and vigour to the lover, not to leave any thing to time and chance, which might, by Anselmo's return, cut off all opportunities of accomplishing so agreeable a work. The best and most officious servant of love's retinue, is occasion or opportunity : this it is that love improves in all its progress, but most in the beginning and first rise of an amour. I trust not in what I have said to the uncertainty of report, but to experience, which affords the most certain and most valuable knowledge, as I will inform you, madam, some day or other ; for I am, like you, made of frail flesh and blood, fired by youth and youthful desires. But, madam, you did not surrender to Lothario till you had sufficient proof of his love, from his eyes, his vows, his promises, and gifts ; till you had seen the merit of his person, and the beauty of his mind ; all which convinced you how much he deserved to be loved. Then trouble yourself no more, madam, with these fears and jealousies ; but thank your stars, that since you were doomed a victim to love, you fell by the force of such valour and merit that cannot be doubted. You yielded to one who has not only the four S's, which are required in every good lover, but even the whole alphabet ; as for example, he is, in my opinion, agreeable, bountiful, constant, dutiful, easy, faithful, gallant, honourable, ingenuous, kind, loyal, mild, noble, officious, prudent, quiet, rich, secret, true, valiant, wise ; the X indeed, is too harsh a letter to agree with him, but he is young and zealous for your honour and

service." Camilla laughed at her woman's alphabet, and thought her (as indeed she was) more learned in the practical art of love, than she had yet confessed. She then informed her mistress of an affair that had been betwixt her and a young man of the town. Camilla was not a little concerned at what she said, being apprehensive that her honour might suffer by her woman's indiscretion ; and therefore asked her if the amour had passed any farther than words ? Leonela, without any fear or shame, owned her guilty correspondence with all the freedom in the world ; for the mistress's guilt gives the servant impudence ; and generally they imitate their ladies' frailties without any fear of the public censure.

Camilla, finding her error past remedy, could only beg Leonela to disclose nothing of her affair to her lover, and manage her amour with secrecy and discretion, for fear Lothario or Anselmo should hear of it. Leonela promised to obey her ; but she did it in such a manner, that Camilla was perpetually in fear of the loss of her reputation by her folly ; for she grew so confident on her knowledge of her lady's transgression, that she admitted the gallant into the house, not caring if her lady knew it, being certain that she durst not make any discovery to her master ; for when once a mistress has suffered her virtue to be vanquished, and admits of any criminal correspondence, it subjects her to her own servants, and makes her subservient to their lewd practices, which she is slavishly bound to conceal. Thus it was with Camilla, who was forced to wink at the visible rendezvous, which Leonela had with

her lover, in a certain chamber of the house which she thought proper for the occasion ; nor was that all, she was constrained to give her the opportunity of hiding him, that he might not be seen by her husband.

But all this caution did not secure him from being seen by Lothario one morning, as he was getting out of the house by break of day. His surprise had made him think it a spirit, had not his haste away, and his muffling himself up as he did, that he might not be known, convinced him of his error, and thrown him into a fit of jealousy, that had certainly undone them all, had not Camilla's wit and address prevented it. For Lothario concluded that Camilla, that had made no very obstinate resistance to him, had as easily surrendered to some other ; and he fancied that the person he saw come from her house was the new favoured lover ; never remembering there was such a person as Leonela in the house, and that he might be a lover of her's. For when once a woman parts with her virtue, she loses the esteem even of the man whose vows and tears won her to abandon it ; and he believes she will with as little, if not less difficulty, yield to another ; he perverts the least suspicions into reality, and takes the slightest appearance for the most evident matter of fact.

Thus Lothario, distracted by the most violent jealousy in the world, without allowing himself time to consider, gave way to the transports of his rage and desire of revenge on Camilla, who had not injured him. He goes immediately to Anselmo, and

having found him a-bed : " I have, my friend," said he to him, " these several days undergone a most severe conflict within my mind, and used all the force and violence I was capable of to conceal an affair from you, which I can no longer forbear discovering, without an apparent wrong to justice, and my friendship. Know, then, that Camilla is now ready to do whatsoever I shall desire of her; and the reason that most prevailed with me to delay this discovery, was, that I would be satisfied whether she were in earnest, or only pretended this compliance to try me ; but had she been so virtuous as you and I believed her, she would, by this time, have informed you of that importunity which, by your desire, I used ; but finding that she is silent, and takes no notice of that to you, I have reason to believe that she is but too sincere in those guilty promises she has made me, of meeting me to my satisfaction in the wardrobe, the next time your absence from the town should furnish her with an opportunity." This was true indeed, for that was the place of their common rendezvous. " Yet I would not have you," continued he, " take a rash and inconsiderate revenge, since it is possible, before the time of assignation, her virtue may rally, and she repent her folly. Therefore, as you have hitherto taken my advice, be ruled by me now, that you may not be imposed on, but have a sufficient conviction before you put your resolves into execution. Pretend two or three days absence, and then privately convey yourself behind the hangings in the wardrobe, as you easily may, whence you may, without difficulty, be an eye-

witness with me of Camilla's conduct ; and if it be as criminal as we may justly fear, then you may with secrecy and speed punish her, as the injury deserves."

Anselmo was extremely surprised at so unexpected a misfortune, to find himself deceived in those imaginary triumphs he pleased himself with, in Camilla's supposed victory over all Lothario's assaults. A great while he was in a silent suspense, with his eyes dejected, without force, and without spirit ; but turning at last to his friend, " You have done all," said he, " Lothario, that I could expect from so perfect a friendship ; I will therefore be entirely guided by your advice : do therefore what you please, but use all the secrecy a thing of this nature requires." Lothario, assuring him of that, left him ; but full of repentance for the rashness he had been guilty of in telling him so much as he had, since he might have taken a sufficient revenge, by a less cruel and dishonourable way. He cursed his want of sense, and the weakness of his resolution, but could not find out any way to produce a less fatal event of his treachery, than he could justly expect from the experiment. But at last he concluded to inform Camilla of all he had done ; which his freedom of access gave him opportunity to do that very day, when he found her alone ; and she began thus to him : — " I am so oppressed, my Lothario, with a misfortune which I lie under, that it will certainly for ever destroy my quiet and happiness, if there be not some speedy remedy found for it : Leonela is grown so presumptuous, on her knowledge of my affairs,

that she admits her lover all night to her chamber, and so exposes my reputation to the censure of any that shall see him go out at unseasonable hours from my house; and the greatest, and most remediless part of my grief is, that I dare not correct or chide her for her imprudence and impudence; for, being conscious of our correspondence, she obliges me to conceal her failings, which I am extremely apprehensive will in the end be very fatal to my happiness." Lothario was at first jealous that Camilla designed cunningly thus to impose her own privado on him for Leonela's; but being convinced by her tears, and the apparent concern in her face, he began to believe her, and at the same time to be infinitely confounded and grieved for what he had done. Yet he comforted Camilla, assuring her he would take effectual care for the future, that Leonela's impudence should do her no prejudice, and therefore begged her not to torment herself any more about it. Then he told all the unhappy effects of his jealous rage, and that her husband had agreed behind the arras to be witness of her weakness. He asked her pardon for the folly, and her counsel how to redress and prevent the ill effect of it, and bring them out of those difficulties into which his madness had plunged them.

Camilla expressed her resentment and her fears; and accused his treachery, baseness, and want of consideration; yet her anger and fears being appeased, and a woman's wit being always more pregnant in difficulties than a man's, she immediately thought

of a way to deliver them from the dangers that bore so dismal and helpless a face. She therefore bid him engage Anselmo to be there the next day, assuring him she did not question but by that means to get a more frequent, and secure opportunity of enjoying one another than they hitherto had had. She would not make him privy to her whole design, but bid him be sure to come after her husband was hid, as soon as Leonela should call him, and that he should answer as directly to whatsoever she should ask him, as if Anselmo were not within hearing. Lothario spared no importunity to get from her her whole design, that he might act his part with the greater assurance, and the better to contribute to the imposing on her husband.—“All you have to do,” replied Camilla, “is to answer me directly what I shall demand.” Nor would she discover any more, for fear he should not acquiesce in her opinion, which she was so well satisfied in, but raise difficulties, and by consequence, obstacles, that might hinder her design from having the desired event, or run her upon some less successful project. Lothario complied, and Anselmo in appearance left the town to retire to his friend in the country, but secretly returned to hide himself in the wardrobe, which he did with the greater ease, because Camilla and Leonela wilfully gave him opportunity.

We may easily imagine the grief with which Anselmo hid himself, since it was to be a spectator of his own dishonour, and the loss of all that happiness he possessed in the embraces of his beautiful and beloved

Camilla. On the other hand, she being now certain that Anselmo was hid, entered the wardrobe with Leonela, and fetching a deep and piteous sigh, thus addressed herself to her.—“Ah! my Leonela! would it not be much better that thou pierce this infamous bosom with Anselmo’s dagger, before I execute what I design, which I have kept from thee that thou might’st not endeavour to disappoint me? Yet not so; for, where is the justice that I should suffer for another’s offence? No, I will first know of Lothario what action of mine has given him assurance to make me a discovery of a passion so injurious to his friend, and my honour. Go to the window, Leonela, and call the wicked man to me, who doubtless is waiting in the street the signal for his admission to accomplish his villainous design; yet first my resolution shall be performed, which, though it be cruel, is what my honour strictly demands of me.”—“Alas! my dear lady,” cried the cunning Leonela, “alas! what do you intend to do with that dagger? Is your fatal design against yourself or Lothario? Alas! you can attack neither without the ruin of your fame and reputation. You had better give no opportunity to that bad man by admitting him while we are thus alone in the house: consider, madam, we are but two weak and helpless women, he a strong and resolute man, whose force is redoubled by the passion and desire that possess him; so that before you may be able to accomplish what you design, he may commit a crime that will be more injurious to you than the loss of your life. We have reason to curse my master Anselmo, who

gives such frequent opportunities to impudence and dishonesty to pollute our house. But, madam, suppose you should kill him, as I believe you design, what shall we do with his dead body?"—"What!" said Camilla, "why we would leave him in this place to be buried by Anselmo; for it must be a grateful trouble to him to bury with his own hand his own infamy and dishonour. Call him therefore quickly, for methinks every moment my revenge is deferred, I injure that loyalty I owe to my husband."

Anselmo gave great attention to all that was said, and every word of Camilla's made a strange alteration in his sentiments, so that he could scarce forbear coming out to prevent his friend's death, when he heard her desperate resolution against his life; but his desire of seeing the end of so brave a resolve withheld him, till he saw an absolute necessity of discovering himself to hinder the mischief. Now Camilla put on a fear and weakness which resembled a swoon; and having thrown herself on a bed in the room, Leonela began a most doleful lamentation over her.—"Alas!" said she, "how unfortunate should I be, if my lady, so eminent for virtue and chastity, as well as beauty, should thus perish in my arms?" This, and much more she uttered with that force of perfect dissimulation, that whoever had seen her would have concluded her one of the most innocent virgins in the world; and her lady a mere persecuted Penelope.—Camilla soon came to herself, and cried to Leonela, "Why do not you call the most treacherous and unfaithful of friends?

Go, fly, and let not thy delays waste my revenge and anger in mere words, and idle threats and curses."—"Madam," replied Leonela, "I will go, but you must first give me that dagger, lest you commit some outrage upon yourself in my absence, which may give an eternal cause of sorrow to all your friends that love and value you."—"Let not those fears detain you," said Camilla, "but assure yourself I will not do any thing till you return; for though I shall not fear to punish myself in the highest degree, yet I shall not, like Lucretia, punish myself, without killing him that was the principal cause of my dishonour. If I must die, I shall not refuse it; but I will first satisfy my revenge on him that has tempted me to come to this guilty assignation, to make him lament his crime without being guilty of any myself."

Camilla could scarce prevail with Leonela to leave her alone, but at last she obeyed her and withdrew; when Camilla entertained herself and her husband with this following soliloquy. "Good heaven," said she, "had I not better have continued my repulses, than by this seeming consent suffer Lothario to think scandalously of me, till my actions shall convince him of his error? That, indeed, might have been better in some respects; but then I should have wanted this opportunity of revenge, and the satisfaction of my husband's injured honour, if he were permitted, without any correction, to go off with the insolence of offering such criminal assaults to my virtue. No, no; let the traitor's life atone for the guilt of his false and unfaithful attempts, and his

blood quench that lewd fire he was not content should burn in his own breast. Let the world be witness, if it ever comes to know my story, that Camilla thought it not enough to preserve her virtue and loyalty to her husband entire, but also revenged the hateful affront, and the intended destruction of it. But it might be most convenient, perhaps, to let Anselmo know of this before I put my revenge in execution ; yet, on the first attempt, I sent him word of it to the village, and I can attribute his not resenting so notorious an abuse, to nothing but his generous temper, and confidence in his friend, incapable of believing so tried a friend could be guilty of so much as a thought against his honour and reputation. Nor is this incredulity so strange, since I for so long together could not persuade myself of the truth of what my eyes and ears conveyed to me ; and nothing could have convinced me of my generous error, had his insolence kept within any bounds, and not dared to proceed to large gifts, large promises, and a flood of tears which he shed, as the undissembled testimony of his passion. But to what purpose are these considerations ? or is there indeed any need of considering, to persuade me to a brave resolve ? Avaunt, false thoughts ! Revenge is now my task ; let the treacherous man approach ; let him come, let him die, let him perish : Let him but perish, no matter what is the fatal consequence. My dear Anselmo received me to his bosom spotless and chaste, and so shall the grave receive me from his arms. Let the event be as fatal as it will, the worst pollution I can this way suffer, is of mingling my

own chaste blood with the impure and corrupted blood of the most false and treacherous of friends." —Having said this, she traversed the room in so passionate a manner, with the drawn dagger in her hand, and shewed such an agitation of spirits in her looks and motion, that she appeared like one distracted, or more like a murderer, than a tender and delicate lady.

Anselmo, not a little to his satisfaction, very plainly saw and heard all this from behind the arras, which, with the greatest reason and evidence in the world, removed all his past doubts and jealousies, and he, with abundance of concern, wished that Lothario would not come, that he might by that means escape the danger that so apparently threatened him; to prevent which he had discovered himself, had he not seen Leonela at that instant bring Lothario into the room. As soon as Camilla saw him enter, she described a line with the poniard on the ground, and told him, the minute he presumed to pass that, she would strike the dagger to his heart. "Hear me," said she, "and observe what I say without interruption; when I have done, you shall have liberty to make what reply you please. Tell me first, Lothario, do you know my husband, and do you know me? The question is not so difficult, but you may give me immediate answer; there is no need of considering, speak, therefore, without delay." Lothario was not so dull as not to guess at her design in having her husband hid behind the hangings, and therefore adapted his answers so well to her questions, that the fiction was lost in the appearance of reality.—"I did never imagine, fair Ca-

milla," said Lothario, " that you would make this assignation, to ask questions so distant from the dear end of my coming. If you had a mind still to delay my promised happiness, you should have prepared me for the disappointment ; for, the nearer the hope of possession brings us to the good we desire, the greater is the pain to have those hopes destroyed. But, to answer your demands, I must own, madam, that I do know your husband, and he me ; that this knowledge has grown up with us from our childhood ; and, that I may be a witness against myself for the injury I am compelled by love to do him, I do also own, divine Camilla, that you do too well know the tenderness of our mutual friendship ; yet love is a sufficient excuse for all my errors, if they were much more criminal than they are. And, madam, that I know you is evident, and love you equal to him, for nothing but your charms could have power enough to make me forget what I owe to my own honour, and what to the holy laws of friendship, all which I have been forced to break by the irresistible tyranny of love. Ah ! had I known you less, I had been more innocent."—" If you confess all this," said Camilla, " if you know us both, how dare you violate so sacred a friendship, injure so true a friend, and appear thus confidently before me, whom you know to be esteemed by him the mirror of his love, in which that love so often views itself with pleasure and satisfaction, and in which you ought to have surveyed yourself so far, as to have seen how small the temptation is, that has prevailed on you to wrong him. But, alas ! this points

me to the cause of your transgression; some suspicious action of mine, when I have been least on my guard, as thinking myself alone; but assure yourself whatever it was, it proceeds not from looseness or levity of principle, but a negligence and liberty which the sex sometimes innocently fall into, when they think themselves unobserved. If this were not the cause, say, traitor, when did I listen to your prayers, or in the least regard your tears and vows, so that you might derive from thence the smallest hope of accomplishing your infamous desires? Did I not always with the last aversion and disdain reject your criminal passion? Did I ever betray a belief in your lavish promises, or admit of your prodigal gifts? But since, without some hope, no love can long subsist, I will lay that hateful guilt on some unhappy inadvertency of mine, and therefore will inflict the same punishment on myself that your crime deserves. And to shew you that I cannot but be cruel to you, who will not spare myself, I sent for you to be a witness of that just sacrifice I shall make to my dear husband's injured honour, on which you have fixed the blackest mark of infamy that your malice could suggest; and which I, alas! have sullied too by my thoughtless neglect of depriving you of the occasion, if, indeed, I gave any, of nourishing your wicked intentions. Once more I tell you, that the bare suspicion that my want of caution, and setting so severe a guard on my actions as I ought, has made you harbour such wild and infamous intentions, is the sharpest of my afflictions, and what with my own hands I resolve to punish with

the utmost severity. For, should I leave that punishment to another, it would but increase my guilt. Yes, I will die ; but first, to satisfy my revenge and impartial justice, I will, unmoved and unrelenting, destroy the fatal cause that has reduced me to this desperate condition."

At these words she flew with so much violence, and so well-acted a fury, on Lothario, with her naked dagger, that he could scarce think it feigned, and therefore secured himself from her blow by avoiding it, and holding her hand. Thereupon, to give more life to the fiction, as in a rage at her disappointed revenge on Lothario, she cried out, "Since my malicious fortune denies a complete satisfaction to my just desires, at least it shall not be in its power entirely to defeat my resolution."—With that, drawing back her dagger-hand from Lothario who held it, she struck it into that part of her body where it might do her the least damage, and then fell down, as fainting away with the wound. Lothario and Leonela, surprised at the unexpected event, knew not yet what to think, seeing her still lie all bloody on the ground. Lothario, pale and trembling, ran to take out the dagger ; but was delivered of his fears when he saw so little blood follow it ; and more than ever admired the cunning and wit of the beautiful Camilla. Yet, to play his part as well, and shew himself a friend, he lamented over Camilla's body in the most pathetic manner in the world, as if she had been really dead ; he cursed himself, and cursed his friend, that had put him on that fatal experiment ; and knowing that Anselmo heard him, he

said such things that were able to draw a greater pity for him than even for Camilla, though she seemed to have lost her life in the unfortunate adventure. Leonela removed her body to the bed, and begged Lothario to seek some surgeon, that might with all the secrecy in the world cure her lady's wound. She also asked his advice how to excuse it to her master, if he should return before it was perfectly cured. He replied, They might say what they pleased, that he was not in a humour of advising, but bid her endeavour to staunch her mistress's blood, for he would go where they should never hear more of him. And so he left them, with all the appearance of grief and concern that the occasion required. He was no sooner gone, but he had leisure to reflect, with the greatest wonder imaginable, on Camilla's and her woman's conduct in this affair, and on the assurance which this scene had given Anselmo of his wife's virtue ; since now, he could not but believe he had a second Portia ; and he longed to meet him, to rejoice over the best dissembled imposture that ever bore away the opinion of truth. Leonela staunched the blood, which was no more than necessary for covering the cheat, and washing the wound with wine only as she bound it up, her discourse was so moving, and so well acted, that it had been alone sufficient to have convinced Anselmo that he had the most virtuous wife in the world. Camilla was not silent, but added fresh confirmations. In every word she spoke, she complained of her cowardice and baseness of spirit, that denied her time and force to dispatch that life which was now so hateful to her. She ask-

ed her too, whether she should inform her husband of what had passed, or not? Leonela was for her concealing it, since the discovery must infallibly engage her husband in a revenge on Lothario, which must as certainly expose him too; for those things were never accomplished without the greatest danger; and that a good wife ought to the best of her power prevent involving her husband in quarrels. Camilla yielded to her reasons; but added, that they must find out some pretended cause of her wound, which he would certainly see at his return. Leonela replied, that it was a difficult task, since she was incapable, even in jest, to dissemble the truth. "Am I not," answered Camilla, "under the same difficulty, who cannot save my life by the odious refuge of a falsehood? Had we not better, then, confess the real truth, than be caught in a lie?"—"Well, madam," returned Leonela, "let this give you no farther trouble; by to-morrow morning I shall find out some expedient or other; though I hope the place where the wound is, may conceal it enough from his observation to secure us from all apprehension; leave, therefore, the whole event to heaven, which always favours and assists the innocent."

Anselmo saw and heard this formal tragedy of his ruined honour with all the attention imaginable, in which all the actors performed their parts so to the life, that they seemed the truth they represented. He wished with the last impatience for the night, that he might convey himself from his hiding-place to his friend's house, and there rejoice for this happy discovery of his wife's experienced virtue.

Camilla and her maid took care to furnish him with an opportunity of departing, of which he soon took hold, for fear of losing it. It is impossible to tell you all the embraces he gave Lothario, and the joy and extreme satisfaction he expressed at his good fortune, or the extravagant praises he gave Camilla. Lothario heard all this without taking a friend's share in the pleasure, for he was shocked with the concern he had to see his friend so grossly imposed on, and the guilt of his own treachery in injuring his honour. Though Anselmo easily perceived that Lothario was not touched with any pleasure at his relation, yet he believed Camilla's wound, caused by him, was the true motive of his not sharing his joy; and therefore assured him, he need not too much trouble himself for it, since it could not be dangerous, she and her woman having agreed to conceal it from him. This cause of his fear being removed, he desired him to put on a face of joy, since, by his means, he should now possess a perfect happiness and content; and therefore he would spend the rest of his life in conveying Camilla's virtue to posterity, by writing her praise in verse. Lothario approved his resolution, and promised to do the same. Thus Anselmo remained the most delightfully deceived of any man alive. He therefore carried Lothario immediately to his house, as the instrument of his glory, though he was, indeed, the only cause of his infamy and dishonour. Camilla received him with a face that ill expressed the satisfaction of her mind, being forced to put on frowns in her looks,

while her heart prompted nothing but smiles of joy for his presence.

For some months the fraud was concealed ; but then fortune, turning her wheel, discovered to the world the wickedness they had so long and artificially disguised ; and Anselmo's impertinent curiosity cost him his life.

## CHAPTER VIII.

*The conclusion of the Novel of the Curious Impertinent ; with the dreadful Battle betwixt Don Quixote, and certain Wine-Skins.*

THE novel was come near a conclusion, when Sancho Panza came running out of Don Quixote's chamber in a terrible fright, crying out, " Help, help, good people, help my master ! He is just now at it, tooth and nail, with that same giant, the Princess Micomicona's foe : I never saw a more dreadful battle in my born-days. He has lent him such a sliver, that whip off went the giant's head, as round as a turnip."—" You are mad, Sancho," said the curate, interrupted in his reading ; " is thy master such a devil of a hero, as to fight a giant at two thousand leagues distance ?" Upon this, they presently heard a noise and bustle in the chamber, and Don Quixote bawling out, " Stay, villain, robber, stay ; since I have thee here, thy scymitar shall but little avail thee ;" and with this, they heard him

strike with his sword, with all his force, against the walls.—“ Good folks,” said Sancho, “ my master does not want your hearkening; why do not you run in and help him? though I believe it is after meat mustard, for sure the giant is by this time gone to pot, and giving an account of his ill life: for I saw his blood run all about the house, and his head sailing in the middle on it: but such a head! it is bigger than any \* wine-skin in Spain.”—“ Death and hell!” cries the inn-keeper, “ I will be cut like a cucumber, if this Don Quixote, or Don Devil, has not been hacking my wine-skins that stood filled at his bed’s-head, and this coxcomb has taken the spilt liquor for blood.” Then running with the whole company into the room, they found the poor knight in the most comical posture imaginable.

He was standing in his shirt, the fore-part of it scarcely reaching to the bottom of his belly, and about a span shorter behind; this added a very peculiar air to his long lean legs, as dirty and hairy as a beast’s. To make him all of a piece, he wore on his head a little red greasy cast night-cap of the inn-keeper’s; he had wrapped one of the best blankets about his left arm for a shield; and wielded his drawn sword in the right, laying about him pell-mell; with now and then a start of some military expression, as if he had been really engaged with

---

\* In Spain they keep their wines in the skin of a hog, goat, sheep, or other beast, pitched within, and sewed close without.

some giant. But the best jest of all, he was all this time fast a-sleep ; for the thoughts of the adventure he had undertaken, had so wrought on his imagination, that his depraved fancy had in his sleep represented to him the kingdom of Micomicon, and the giant : and dreaming that he was then fighting him, he assaulted the wine-skins so desperately, that he set the whole chamber afloat with good wine. The inn-keeper, enraged to see the havoc, flew at Don Quixote with his fists ; and had not Cardenio and the curate taken him off, he had proved a giant indeed against the knight. All this could not wake the poor Don, till the barber, throwing a bucket of cold water on him, wakened him from his sleep, though not from his dream.

The shortness of her champion's shirt gave Dorothea a surfeit of the battle. Sancho ran up and down the room searching for the giant's head, till, finding his labour fruitless, " Well, well," said he, " now I see plainly that this house is haunted, for when I was here before, in this very room was I beaten like any stock-fish, but knew no more than the man in the moon who struck me ; and now the giant's head that I saw cut off with these eyes, is vanished ; and I am sure I saw the body spout blood like a pump."—" What a prating and a nonsense does this dananed son of a whore keep about blood and a pump, and I know not what," said the inn-keeper ; " I tell you, rascal, it is my wine-skins that are slashed, and my wine that runs about the floor here, and I hope to see the soul of him that spilt it swimming in hell for his pains."—" Well, well,"

said Sancho, “ do not trouble me ; I only tell you, that I cannot find the giant’s head, and my earldom is gone after it, and so I am undone, like salt in water.” And truly Sancho’s waking dream was as pleasant as his master’s when asleep. The inn-keeper was almost mad to see the foolish squire harp so on the same string with his frantic master, and swore they should not come off now as before ; that their chivalry should be no satisfaction for his wine, but that they should pay him sauce for the damage, and for the very leathern patches which the wounded wine-skins would want.

Don Quixote, in the meanwhile, believing he had finished his adventure, and mistaking the curate, that held him by the arms, for the Princess Micomicona, fell on his knees before him, and with a respect due to a royal presence ; “ Now may your highness,” said he, “ great and illustrious princess, live secure, free from any further apprehensions from your conquered enemy ; and now I am acquitted of my engagement, since, by the assistance of heaven, and the influence of her favour, by whom I live and conquer, your adventure is so happily achieved.”—“ Did not I tell you so, gentlefolks ?” said Sancho ; “ who is drunk or mad now ? See if my master has not already put the giant in pickle ? Here are the bulls,\* and I am an earl.” The

---

\* In allusion to the joy of the mob in Spain, when they see the bulls coming.

whole company (except the inn-keeper, who gave himself to the devil,) were like to split at the extravagancies of master and man. At last, the barber, Cardenio, and the curate, having, with much ado, got Don Quixote to bed, he presently fell asleep, being heartily tired ; and then they left him, to comfort Sancho Panza for the loss of the giant's head ; but it was no easy matter to appease the inn-keeper, who was at his wit's end for the unexpected and sudden fate of his wine-skins.

The hostess, in the mean-time, ran up and down the house crying and roaring : " In an ill hour," said she, " did this unlucky knight-errant come into my house ; I wish, for my part, I had never seen him, for he has been a dear guest to me. He and his man, his horse and his ass, went away last time without paying me a cross for their supper, their bed, their litter and provender ; and all, forsooth, because he was seeking adventures. What, in the devil's name, have I to do with his statutes of chivalry ? If they oblige him not to pay, they should oblige him not to eat neither. It was upon this score that the t'other fellow took away my good tail ; it is clear spoiled, the hair is all torn off, and my husband can never use it again. And now to come upon me again, with destroying my wine-skins, and spilling my liquor ; may some body spill his heart's blood for it for me ! But I will be paid, so I will, to the last maravedis, or I will disown my name, and forswear the mother that bore me." Her honest maid Maritornes seconded her fury ; but Master

Curate stopped their mouths by promising that he would see them satisfied for their wine and their skins, but especially for the tail which they kept such a clutter about. Dorothea comforted Sancho, assuring him, that whenever it appeared that his master had killed the giant, and restored her to her dominions, he should be sure of the best earldom in her disposal. With this he huckled up again, and swore "that he himself had seen the giant's head, by the same token that it had a beard that reached down to his middle; and if it could not be found it must be hid by witchcraft, for every thing went by enchantment in that house, as he had found to his cost when he was there before."—Dorothea answered, that she believed him; and desired him to pluck up his spirits, for all things would be well. All parties being quieted, Cardenio, Dorothea, and the rest, entreated the curate to finish the novel, which was so near a conclusion; and he, in obedience to their commands, took up the book and read on.

Anselmo grew so satisfied in Camilla's virtue, that he lived with all the content and security in the world; to confirm which, Camilla ever in her looks seemed to discover her aversion to Lothario, which made him desire Anselmo to dispense with his coming to his house, since he found how averse his wife was to him, and how great a disgust she had to his company; but Anselmo would not be persuaded to yield to his request; and was so blind, that, seeking his content, he perpetually promoted his dis honour. He was not the only person pleased with

the condition he lived in ; Leonela was so transported with her amour, that, secured by her lady's connivance, she perfectly abandoned herself to the indiscreet enjoyment of her gallant : so that one night her master heard somebody in her chamber, and coming to the door to discover who it was, he found it held fast against him ; but at last forcing it open, he saw one leap out of the window the instant he entered the room : he would have pursued him, but Leonela clinging about him, begged him to appease his anger and concern, since the person that made his escape was her husband. Anselmo would not believe her, but drawing his dagger, threatened to kill her if she did not immediately make full discovery of the matter. Distracted with fear, she begged him to spare her life, and she would discover things that more nearly related to him than he imagined.—“ Speak quickly then,” replied Anselmo, “ or you die.”—“ It is impossible,” returned she, “ that in this confusion and fright I should say anything that can be understood ; but give me but till to-morrow morning, and I will lay such things before you, as will surprise and amaze you : but believe me, sir, the person that leaped out of the window, is a young man of this city, who is contracted to me.” This something appeased Anselmo, and prevailed with him to allow her till the next morning to make her confession : for he was too well assured of Camilla’s virtue, by the past trial, to suspect that there could be anything relating to her in what Leonela had to tell him : wherefore fastening her in her room, and threatening that she should

never come out till she had done what she had promised, he returned to his chamber to Camilla, and told her all that had passed, without omitting the promise she had given him to make some strange discovery the next morning. You may easily imagine the concern this gave Camilla ; she made no doubt but that the discovery Leonela had promised was of her disloyalty ; and without waiting to know whether it was so or not, that very night, as soon as Anselmo was asleep, taking with her all her jewels, and some money, she got undiscovered out of the house, and went to Lothario, informed him of all that had passed, and desired him either to put her in some place of safety, or to go with her where they might enjoy each other secure from the fears of Anselmo. This surprising relation so confounded Lothario, that for some time he knew not what he did, or what resolution to take ; but at last, with Camilla's consent, he put her into a nunnery, where a sister of his was abbess, and immediately, without acquainting any body with his departure, left the city.

Anselmo, as soon as it was day, got up, without missing his wife, and hurried away to Leonela's chamber, to hear what she had to say to him ; but he found nobody there, only the sheets tied together, and fastened to the window, shewed which way she had made her escape ; on which he returned very sad to tell Camilla the adventure, but was extremely surprised when he found her not in the whole house, nor could hear any news of her from his servants ; but finding in his search her trunks open, and most of her jewels gone, he no longer doubted

of his dishonour : so, pensive and half-dressed as he was, he went to Lothario's lodging to tell him his misfortune ; but when his servants informed him that he was gone that very night, with all his money and jewels, his pangs were redoubled, and his grief increased almost to madness. To conclude, he returned home, found his house empty, for fear had driven away all his servants. He knew not what to think, say, or do. He saw himself forsaken by his friend, his wife, and his very servants, with whom he imagined that Heaven itself had abandoned him ; but his greatest trouble was to find himself robbed of his honour and reputation, for Camilla's crime was but too evident from all these concurring circumstances. After a thousand distracting thoughts, he resolved to retreat to that village whither he formerly retired, to give Lothario an opportunity to ruin him ; wherefore, fastening up his doors, he took horse, full of despair and languishing sorrow, the violence of which was so great, that he had scarce rid half way, when he was forced to alight, and, tying his horse to a tree, he threw himself beneath it, and spent, in that melancholy posture, a thousand racking reflections, most part of the day ; till, a little before night, he discovered a passenger coming the same road, of whom he inquired what news at Florence ? The traveller replied, that the most surprising news that had been heard of late, was now all the talk of the city, which was, that Lothario had that very night carried away the wealthy Anselmo's wife Camilla, which was all confessed by Camilla's woman, who was apprehended that

night as she slipped from the window of Anselmo's house, by a pair of sheets. "The truth of this story I cannot affirm," continued the traveller; "but every body is astonished at the accident; for no man could ever suspect such a crime from a person engaged in so strict a friendship with Anselmo as Lothario was; for they were called the Two Friends."—"Is it yet known," replied Anselmo, "which way Lothario and Camilla are gone?"—"No, sir," returned the traveller, "though the governor has made as strict a search after them as is possible."—Anselmo asked no more questions, but after they had taken their leaves of each other, the traveller left him and pursued his journey.

This mournful news so affected the unfortunate Anselmo, that he was struck with death almost that very moment. Getting therefore on his horse as well as he could, he arrived at his friend's house. He knew nothing yet of his disgrace; but seeing him so pale and melancholy, concluded that some great misfortune had befallen him. Anselmo desired to be immediately led to his chamber, and furnished with pen, ink, and paper, and to be left alone with his door locked: when, finding that his end approached, he resolved to leave in writing the cause of his sudden and unexpected death. Taking therefore the pen, he began to write; but, unable to finish what he designed, he died a martyr to his impudent curiosity. The gentleman, finding he did not call, and that it grew late, resolved to enter his chamber, and see whether his friend was better or worse. He found him half out of bed, lying on his

face, with the pen in his hand, and a paper open before him. Seeing him in this posture, he drew near him, called and moved him, but soon found he was dead ; which made him call his servants to behold the unhappy event ; and then took up the paper, which he saw was written in Anselmo's own hand, and was to this effect.

“A foolish and impertinent desire has robbed me of life. If Camilla hear of my death, let her know that I forgive her ; for she was not obliged to do miracles, nor was there any reason I should have desired or expected it ; and since I contrived my own dishonour, there is no cause”——

Thus far Anselmo writ ; but life would not hold out till he could give the reasons he designed. The next day the gentleman of the house sent word of Anselmo's death to his relations, who already knew his misfortunes, as well as the nunnery whither Camilla was retired. She herself was indeed very near that death which her husband had passed ; though not for the loss of him, but Lothario ; of which she had lately heard a flying report ; but though she was a widow now, she would neither take the veil, nor leave the nunnery ; till, in a few days, the news was confirmed of his being slain in a battle betwixt Monsieur de Lautrec, and that great general, Gonzalo Fernandes de Cordona, in the kingdom of Naples. This was the end of the offending, and too late penitent friend ; the news of which made Camilla immediately profess herself, and soon after,

overwhelmed with grief and melancholy, pay for her transgression with the loss of her life. This was the unhappy end of them all, proceeding from so impertinent a beginning.

"I like this novel well enough," said the curate; "yet, after all, I cannot persuade myself that there is anything of truth in it; and if it be purely invention, the author was in the wrong; for it is not to be imagined there could ever be a husband so foolish, as to venture on so dangerous an experiment. Had he made his husband and wife a gallant and a mistress, the fable had appeared more probable; but, as it is, it is next to impossible. However, I must confess, I have nothing to object against his manner of telling it."

## CHAPTER IX.

### *Containing an Account of many surprising Accidents in the Inn.*

At the same time the inn-keeper, who stood at the door, seeing company coming, "More guests," cried he; "a brave jolly troop, on my word. If they stop here, we may sing, O be joyful."—"What are they?" said Cardenio.—"Four men," said the host, "on horseback, à la Gineta,\* with black

---

\* A kind of riding with short stirrups, which the Spaniards took from the Arabians, and is still used by all the African and Eastern nations.

masks † on their faces, and armed with lances and targets ; a lady too all in white, that rides single and masked ; and two running footmen."—"Are they near ?" said the curate.—"Just at the door," replied the inn-keeper.—Hearing this, Dorothea veiled herself, and Cardenio had just time enough to step into the next room, where Don Quixote lay, when the strangers came into the yard. The four horsemen, who made a very genteel appearance, dismounted and went to help down the lady, whom one of them taking in his arms, carried into the house ; where he seated her in a chair by the chamber-door, into which Cardenio had withdrawn. All this was done without discovering their faces, or speaking a word ; only the lady, as she sat down in the chair, breathed out a deep sigh, and let her arms sink down, in a weak and fainting posture. The curate, marking their odd behaviour, which raised in him a curiosity to know who they were, went to their servants in the stable, and asked what their masters were ? "Indeed, ‡ sir," said one of them, "that is more than we can tell you ; they seem of no mean quality, especially that gentleman who carried the lady into the house, for the rest pay him great respect, and his word is a law to them."—

---

† *Antifaz*; a piece of thin black silk, which the Spaniards wear before their faces in travelling, not for disguise, but to keep off the dust and sun.

‡ It is in the original *par diez*; (*i. e.* by ten) instead of *par Dios*, (*i. e.* by God) thinking to cheat the devil of an oath.

"Who is the lady?" said the curate. "We know no more of her than the rest," answered the fellow, "for we could never see her face all the time, and it is impossible we should know her or them any otherwise. They picked us up on the road, my comrade and myself, and prevailed with us to wait on them to Andalusia, promising to pay us well for our trouble; so that bating the two days travelling in their company, they are utter strangers to us."—  
"Could you not hear them name one another all this time?" asked the curate.—"No, truly, sir," answered the footman, "for we heard them not speak a syllable all the way: the poor lady, indeed, used to sigh and grieve so piteously, that we are persuaded she has no stomach to this journey: whatever may be the cause we know not; by her garb she seems to be a nun, but by her grief and melancholy, one might guess they are going to make her one, when perhaps the poor girl has not a bit of nun's flesh about her."—  
"Very likely," said the curate; and with that leaving them, he returned to the place where he left Dorothea, who, hearing the masked lady sigh so frequently, moved by the natural pity of the soft sex, could not forbear inquiring the cause of her sorrow.—  
"Pardon me, madam," said she, "if I beg to know your grief; and assure yourself, that my request does not proceed from mere curiosity, but an earnest inclination to serve and assist you, if your misfortune be any such as our sex is naturally subject to, and in the power of a woman to cure."—The melancholy lady made no return to her compliment, and Dorothea

pressed her in vain with new reasons, when the gentleman, whom the foot-boy signified to be the chief of the company, interposed : " Madam," said he, " do not trouble yourself to throw away any generous offer on that ungrateful woman, whose nature cannot return an obligation ; neither expect any answer to your demands, for her tongue is a stranger to truth."—" Sir," said the disconsolate lady, " my truth and honour have made me thus miserable, and my sufferings are sufficient to prove you the falsest and most base of men."—Cardenio being only parted from the company by Don Quixote's chamber-door, overheard these last words very distinctly ; and immediately cried out, " Good heaven, what do I hear ! what voice struck my ear just now ?" The lady, startled at his exclamation, sprung from the chair, and would have bolted into the chamber whence the voice came ; but the gentleman perceiving it, laid hold on her, to prevent her, which so disordered the lady that her mask fell off, and discovered an incomparable face, beautiful as an angel's, though very pale, and strangely discomposed, her eyes eagerly rolling on every side, which made her appear distracted. Dorothea and the rest, not guessing what her eyes sought by their violent motion, beheld her with grief and wonder. She struggled so hard, and the gentleman was so disordered by beholding her, that his mask dropped off too, and discovered to Dorothea, who was assisting to hold the lady, the face of her husband Don Ferdinand. Scarce had she known him, when, with a long and dismal oh ! she fell in a swoon, and would have

reached the floor with all her weight, had not the barber, by good fortune, stood behind and supported her. The curate run presently to help her, and pulling off her veil to throw water in her face, Don Ferdinand presently knew her, and was struck almost as dead as she at the sight; nevertheless, he did not quit Lucinda, who was the lady that struggled so hard to get out of his hands. Cardenio hearing Dorothea's exclamation, and imagining it to be Lucinda's voice, flew into the chamber in great disorder, and the first object he met was Don Ferdinand holding Lucinda, who presently knew him. They were all struck dumb with amazement: Dorothea gazed on Don Ferdinand; Don Ferdinand on Cardenio; and Cardenio and Lucinda on one another.

At last Lucinda broke silence, and addressing Don Ferdinand, "Let me go," said she; "unloose your hold, my lord: by the generosity you should have, or by your inhumanity, since it must be so, I conjure you, leave me, that I may cling like ivy to my old support; and from whom neither your threats, nor gifts, nor promises, could ever alienate my love. Contend not against heaven, whose power alone could bring me to my dear husband's sight, by such strange and unexpected means: you have a thousand instances to convince you, that nothing but death can make me ever forget him: let this, at least, turn your love into rage, which may prompt you to end my miseries with my life, here before my dear husband, where I shall be proud to lose it, since my death may convince him of my unshaken love and honour, till the last minute of my

life." Dorothea, by this time had recovered, and finding, by Lucinda's discourse who she was, and that Don Ferdinand would not unhand her, she made a virtue of necessity, and falling at his feet, " My lord," cried she, all bathed in tears, " if that beauty which you hold in your arms, has not altogether dazzled your eyes, you may behold at your feet the once happy, but now miserable Dorothea. I am the poor and humble villager, whom your generous bounty, I dare not say your love, did descend to raise to the honour of calling you her own : I am she, who, once confined to peaceful innocence, led a contented life, till your importunity, your shew of honour, and deluding words, charmed me from my retreat, and made me resign my freedom to your power. How I am recompensed may be guessed by my grief, and my being found here in this strange place, whither I was led, not through any dishonourable ends, but purely by despair and grief to be forsaken of you. It was at your desire I was bound to you by the strictest tie, and whatever you do, you can never cease to be mine. Consider, my dear lord, that my matchless love may balance the beauty and nobility of the person for whom you would forsake me ; she cannot share your love, for it is only mine ; and Cardenio's interest in her will not admit a partner. It is easier far, my lord, to recal your wandering desires, and fix them upon her that adores you, than to draw her to love who hates you. Remember how you did solicit my humble state, and conscious of my meanness, ye paid a veneration to my innocence, which,

joined with the honourable condition of my yielding to your desires, pronounce me free from ill design or dishonour. Consider these undeniable truths : have some regard to your honour ! remember you are a Christian ! Why should you then make her life end so miserably, whose beginning your favour made so happy ? If I must not expect the usage and respect of a wife, let me but serve you as a slave ; so I belong to you, though in the meanest rank, I never shall complain : let me not be exposed to the slandering reflections of the censorious world by so cruel a separation from my lord : afflict not the declining years of my poor parents, whose faithful services to you and yours have merited a more suitable return. If you imagine the current of your noble blood should be defiled by mixing with mine, consider how many noble houses have run in such a channel ; besides, the woman's side is not essentially requisite to ennable descent : But chiefly think on this, that virtue is the truest nobility, which, if you stain by basely wronging me, you bring a greater blot upon your family than marrying me could cause. In fine, my lord, you cannot, must not disown me for your wife : to attest which truth, I call your own words, which must be true, if you prize yourself for honour, and that nobility, whose want you so despise in me. Witness your oaths and vows, witness that Heaven which you so oft invoked to ratify your promises ; and if all these should fail, I make my last appeal to your own conscience, whose sting will always represent my wrongs

fresh to your thoughts, and disturb your joys amidst your greatest pleasures."

These, with many such arguments, did the mournful Dorothea urge, appearing so lovely in her sorrow, that Don Ferdinand's friends, as well as all the rest, sympathized with her; Lucinda, particularly, as much admiring her wit and beauty, as moved by the tears, the piercing sighs and moans that followed her entreaties; and she would have gone nearer to have comforted her, had not Ferdinand's arms, that still held her, prevented it. He stood full of confusion, with his eyes fixed attentively on Dorothea a great while; at last, opening his arms, he quitted Lucinda, "Thou hast conquered," cried he, "charming Dorothea, thou hast conquered me; it is impossible to resist so many united truths and charms." Lucinda was still so disordered and weak, that she would have fallen when Ferdinand quitted her, had not Cardenio, without regard to his safety, leaped forward and caught her in his arms, and embracing her with eagerness and joy; "Thanks, gracious Heaven!" cried he aloud; "my dear, my faithful wife, thy sorrows are now ended; for where canst thou rest more safe than in my arms, which now support thee, as once they did when my blessed fortune first made thee mine?" Lucinda then opening her eyes, and finding herself in the arms of her Cardenio, without regard to ceremony or decency, threw her arms about his neck, and, laying her face to his, "Yes," said she, "thou art he, thou art my lord indeed! It is even you yourself, the right owner of this poor,

harassed captive. Now, fortune, act thy worst ; nor fears nor threats shall ever part me from the sole support and comfort of my life."—This sight was very surprising to Don Ferdinand and the other spectators. Dorothea perceiving, by Don Ferdinand's change of countenance, and laying his hand to his sword, that he prepared to assault Cardenio, fell suddenly on her knees, and, with an endearing embrace, held Don Ferdinand's legs so fast, that he could not stir. "What means," cried she, all in tears, "the only refuge of my hope? See here thy own and dearest wife at thy feet, and her you would enjoy in her true husband's arms. Think then, my lord, how unjust is your attempt to dissolve that knot which Heaven has tied so fast. Can you ever think or hope success in your design on her, who, contemning all dangers, and confirmed in strictest constancy and honour, before your face lies bathed in tears of joy and passion in her true lover's bosom? For Heaven's sake I entreat you, by your own words I conjure you, to mitigate your anger, and permit that faithful pair to consummate their joys, and spend their remaining days in peace. Thus may you make it appear that you are generous and truly noble, giving the world so strong a proof that you have your reason at command, and your passion in subjection." All this while Cardenio, though he still held Lucinda in his arms, had a watchful eye on Don Ferdinand; resolving, if he had made the least offer to his prejudice, to make him repent it and all his party, if possible, though at the expence

of his life. But Don Ferdinand's friend, the curate, the barber, and all the company, (not forgetting honest Sancho Panza,) got together about Don Ferdinand, and entreated him to pity the beautiful Dorothea's tears ; that, considering what she had said, the truth of which was apparent, it would be the highest injustice to frustrate her lawful hopes ; that their strange and wonderful meeting could not be attributed to chance, but the peculiar and directing providence of Heaven ; that nothing, (as Mr Curate very well urged,) but death could part Cardenio from Lucinda ; and that though the edge of his sword might separate them, he would make them happier by death, than he could hope to be by surviving ; that, in irrecoverable accidents, a submission to fate, and a resignation of our wills, shewed not only the greatest prudence, but also the highest courage and generosity ; that he should not envy those happy lovers what the bounty of Heaven had conferred on them, but that he should turn his eyes on Dorothea's grief, view her incomparable beauty, which, with her true and unfeigned love, made large amends for the meanness of her parentage ; but principally it lay upon him, if he gloried in the titles of nobility and christianity, to keep his promise unviolated ; that the more reasonable part of mankind could not otherwise be satisfied, or have any esteem for him. Also, that it was the special prerogative of beauty, if heightened by virtus, and adorned with modesty, to lay claim to any dignity, without disparagement or scandal to the person that raises it ; and that the strong dictates of delight ha-

ving been once indulged, we are not to be blamed for following them afterwards; provided they be not unlawful. In short, to these reasons they added so many enforcing arguments, that Don Ferdinand, who was truly a gentleman, could no longer resist reason, but stooped down, and, embracing Dorothea, "Rise, madam," said he, "it is not proper that she should lie prostrate at my feet, who triumphs over my soul. If I have not hitherto paid you all the respect I ought, it was perhaps so ordered by Heaven, that, having by this a stronger conviction of your constancy and goodness, I may henceforth set the greater value on your merit. Let the future respects and services I shall pay you, plead a pardon for my past transgressions; and let the violent passions of my love, that first made me yours, be an excuse for that which caused me to forsake you. View the now happy Lucinda's eyes, and there read a thousand farther excuses; but I promise henceforth never to disturb her quiet; and may she live long and contented with her dear Cardenio, as I hope to do with my dearest Dorothea." —Thus concluding, he embraced her again so lovingly, that it was with no small difficulty that he kept in his tears, which he endeavoured to conceal, being ashamed to discover so effeminate a proof of his remorse.

Cardenio, Lucinda, and the greatest part of the company, could not so well command their passions, but all wept for joy: even Sancho Panza himself shed tears; though, as he afterwards confessed, it was not for downright grief, but because he found

not Dorothea to be the Queen of Micomicona, as he supposed, and of whom he expected so many favours and preferments. Cardenio and Lucinda fell at Don Ferdinand's feet, giving him thanks, with the strongest expressions which gratitude could suggest ; he raised them up, and received their acknowledgments with much modesty ; then begged to be informed by Dorothea, how she came to that place. She related to him all she had told Cardenio, but with such a grace, that what were misfortunes to her, proved an inexpressible pleasure to those that heard her relation. When she had done, Don Ferdinand told all that had befallen him in the city, after he found the paper in Lucinda's bosom, which declared Cardenio to be her husband ; how he would have killed her, had not her parents prevented him ; how afterwards, mad with shame and anger, he left the city, to wait a more commodious opportunity of revenge ; how, in a short time, he learned that Lucinda was fled to a nunnery, resolving to end her days there, if she could not spend them with Cardenio ; that, having desired those three gentlemen to go with him, they went to the nunnery, and, waiting till they found the gate open, he left two of the gentlemen to secure the door, while he, with the other, entered the house, where they found Lucinda talking with a nun in the cloister. They forcibly brought her thence to a village, where they disguised themselves for their more convenient flight, which they more easily brought about, the nunnery being situate in the fields, distant a good way from any town. He likewise added, how Lucinda, finding

herself in his power, fell into a swoon ; and that after she came to herself, she continually wept and sighed, but would not speak a syllable ; and that, accompanied with silence only and tears, they had travelled till they came to that inn, which proved to him as his arrival at heaven, having put a happy conclusion to all his earthly misfortunes.

## CHAPTER X.

*The History of the famous Princess Micomicona continued, with other pleasant Adventures.*

THE joy of the whole company was unspeakable by the happy conclusion of this perplexed business. Dorothea, Cardenio, and Lucinda, thought the sudden change of their affairs too surprising to be real ; and through a disuse of good fortune, could hardly be induced to believe their happiness. Don Ferdinand thanked Heaven a thousand times for its propitious conduct in leading him out of a labyrinth, in which his honour and virtue were like to have been lost. The curate, as he was very instrumental in the general reconciliation, had likewise no small share in the general joy ; and that no discontent might sour their universal satisfaction, Cardenio and the curate engaged to see the hostess satisfied for all the damages committed by Don Quixote : only poor Sancho drooped pitifully. He found his lordship and his hopes vanished into smoke, the Princess Micomicona was changed to Dorothea, and

the giant to Don Ferdinand. Thus, very musty and melancholy, he slipt into his master's chamber, who had slept on, and was just wakened, little thinking of what had happened.

"I hope your early rising will do you no hurt," said he, "Sir Knight of the Woeful Figure; but you may now sleep on till doom's-day if you will; nor need you trouble your head any longer about killing any giant, or restoring the princess, for all that is done to your hand."—"That is more than probable," answered the knight; "for I have had the most extraordinary, the most prodigious, and bloody battle with the giant, that I ever had, or shall have, during the whole course of my life. Yet with one cross stroke I laid his head thwack on the ground, whence the great effusion of blood seemed like a violent stream of water."—"Of wine, you mean," said Sancho; "for you must know, (if you know it not already,) that your worship's dead giant is a broached wine-skin; and the blood some thirty gallons of tent which it held in its belly; and your head so cleverly struck off, is the whore my mother; and so the devil take both giant and head, and all together, for Sancho."—"What sayest thou, madman?" said the Don; "thou art frantic, sure."—"Rise, rise, sir," said Sancho, "and see what fine work you have cut out for yourself; here is the devil and all to pay for, and your great queen is changed into a private gentlewoman, called Dorothea, with some other such odd matters, that you will wonder with a vengeance."—"I can wonder at nothing here," said Don Quixote, "where you may

remember, I told you all things ruled by enchantment."—"I believe it," quoth Sancho, "had my tossing in a blanket been of that kind; but sure it was the likest the tossing in a blanket of anything I ever knew in my life. And this same inn-keeper, I remember very well, was one of those that tossed me into the air, and as cleverly and heartily he did it as a man could wish, I will say that for him; so that after all I begin to smell a rat, and do perilously suspect that all our enchantment will end in nothing but bruises and broken bones."—"Heaven will retrieve all," said the knight; "I will therefore dress, and march to the discovery of these wonderful transformations."—While Sancho made him ready, the curate gave Don Ferdinand and the rest an account of Don Quixote's madness, and of the device he used to draw him from the Poor Rock, to which the supposed disdain of his mistress had banished him in imagination. Sancho's adventures made also a part in the story, which proved very diverting to the strangers. He added, that since Dorothea's change of fortune had baulked their design that way, some other trick should be found to decoy him home. Cardenio offered his service in the affair, and that Lucinda should personate Dorothea. "No, no," answered Don Ferdinand; "Dorothea shall humour the jest still, if this honest gentleman's habitation be not very far off."—"Only two days' journey," said the curate.—"I would ride twice as far," said Don Ferdinand, "for the pleasure of so good and charitable an action."—By this Don Quixote had sallied out, armed cap-a-pee, Mambrino's helmet (with a

great hole in it,) on his head ; his shield on his left arm, and with his right he leaned on his lance. His meagre, yellow, weather-beaten face, of half a league in length ; the unaccountable medley of his armour, together with his grave and solemn port, struck Don Ferdinand and his companions dumb with admiration ; while the champion, casting his eyes on Dorothea, with great gravity and solidity, broke silence with these words.

" I am informed by this my squire, beautiful lady, that your greatness is annihilated, and your majesty reduced to nothing ; for of a queen and mighty princess, as you used to be, you are become a private damsæl. If any express order from the necromantic king your father, doubting the ability and success of my arm in the reinstating you, has occasioned this change, I must tell him, that he is no conjurer in these matters, and does not know one half of his trade ; \* nor is he skilled in the revolutions of chivalry : for had he been conversant in the study of knight-errantry as I have been, he might have found, that in every age, champions of less fame than Don Quixote de la Mancha have finished more desperate adventures ; since the killing of a pitiful giant, how arrogant soever he may be, is no such great achievement ; for, not many hours past, I encountered one myself ; the success I will not mention, lest the incredulity of some people

---

\* Literally, one half of the mass, the saying of which is one great part of the priestly office.

might distrust the reality ; but time, the discoverer of all things, will disclose it, when least expected."— " Hold there," said the host, " it was with two wine-skins, but no giant, that you fought."—Don Ferdinand silenced the inn-keeper, and bid him by no means interrupt Don Quixote, who thus went on. " To conclude, most high and disinherited lady, if your father, for the causes already mentioned, has caused this metamorphosis in your person, believe him not ; for there is no peril on earth, through which my sword shall not open a way ; and assure yourself that in a few days, by the overthrow of your enemy's head, it shall fix on yours that crown, which is your lawful inheritance." Here Don Quixote stopt, waiting the princess's answer ; she, assured of Don Ferdinand's consent to carry on the jest, till Don Quixote was got home, and assuming a face of gravity, " Whosoever," answered she, " has informed you, valorous Knight of the Woeful Figure, that I have altered or changed my condition, has imposed upon you ; for I am just the same to-day as yesterday. It is true, some unexpected, but fortunate accidents, have varied some circumstances of my fortune, much to my advantage, and far beyond my hopes ; but I am neither changed in my person, nor altered in my resolution of employing the force of your redoubtable and invincible arm in my favour. I therefore apply myself to your usual generosity, to have these words spoken to my father's dishonour recalled, and believe these easy and infallible means to redress my wrongs, the pure effects

of his wisdom and policy, as the good fortune I now enjoy, has been the consequence of your surprising deeds, as this noble presence can testify. What should hinder us then from setting forward to-morrow morning, depending for a happy and successful conclusion on the will of Heaven, and the power of your unparalleled courage?"

The ingenious Dorothea having concluded, Don Quixote turning to Sancho, with all the signs of fury imaginable : " Now must I tell thee, poor paltry hang-dog," said he, " thou art the veriest rascal in all Spain ; tell me, rogue, scoundrel, did not you just now inform me, that this princess was changed into a little private damsel, called Dorothea, and the head which I lopped from the giant's shoulders, was the whore your mother, with a thousand other absurdities ? Now, by all the powers of heaven," looking up, and grinding his teeth together, " I have a mind so to use thee, as to make thee appear a miserable example to all succeeding squires, that shall dare to tell a knight-errant a lie."—" Good your worship," cried Sancho, " have patience, I beseech you : mayhap I am mistaken or so, about my lady Princess Micomicona's concern there ; but that the giant's head came off the wine-skin's shoulders, and that the blood was as good tent as ever was tipt over tongue, I will take my corporal oath on it ; Gadzookers, sir, are not the skins all hacked and slashed within there at your bed's-head, and the wine all in a puddle in your chamber ? But you will guess at the meat presently, by the sauce ; the proof

of the pudding is in the eating, master ; \* and if my landlord here do not let you know it to your cost, he is a very honest and civil fellow, that is all."— "Sancho," said the Don, "I pronounce thee *non compas*; I therefore pardon thee, and have done."— "It is enough," said Don Ferdinand; "we therefore, in pursuance of the princess's orders, will this night refresh ourselves, and to-morrow we will all of us set out to attend the lord Don Quixote, in prosecution of this important enterprize he has undertaken, being all impatient to be eye-witnesses of his celebrated and matchless courage."—"I shall be proud of the honour of serving and waiting upon you, my good lord," replied Don Quixote, "and reckon myself infinitely obliged by the favour and good opinion of so honourable a company; which I shall endeavour to improve and confirm, though at the expence of the last drop of my blood."

Many other compliments had passed between Don Quixote and Don Ferdinand, when the arrival of a stranger interrupted them. His dress represented him as a Christian newly returned from Barbary: he was clad in a short-skirted coat of blue cloth, with short sleeves, and no collar, his breeches were

---

\* The original runs, *It will be seen in the frying of the eggs.* When eggs are to be fried, there is no knowing their goodness till they are broken, *Royal Dict.* Or, a thief stole a frying-pan, and the woman, who owned it, meeting him, asked him what he was carrying away: he answered, You will know when your eggs are to be fried.

of blue linen, with a cap of the same colour, a pair of date-coloured stockings, and a Turkish scymitar hung by a scarf, in manner of a shoulder-belt. There rode a woman in his company, clad in a Moorish dress ; her face was covered with a veil ; she had on a little cap of gold-tissue, and a Turkish mantle that reached from her shoulders to her feet. The man was well-shaped and strong, his age about forty, his face somewhat tanned, his mustachios long, and his beard handsome. In short, his genteel mien and person were too distinguishable to let the gentleman be hid by the meanness of his habit. He called presently for a room, and, being answered that all were full, seemed a little troubled ; however, he went to the woman who came along with him, and took her down from her ass. The ladies, being all surprised at the oddness of the Moorish dress, had the curiosity to flock about the stranger ; and Dorothea, very discreetly imagining that both she and her conductor were tired, and took it ill that they could not have a chamber, "I hope, madam, you will bear your ill fortune patiently," said she ; "for want of room is an inconvenience incident to all public inns ; but if you please, madam, to take up with us," pointing to Lucinda, "you may perhaps find that you have met with worse entertainment on the road than what this place affords."—The unknown lady made her no answer, but, rising up, laid her hands across her breast, bowed her head, and inclined her body, as a sign that she acknowledged the favour. By her silence they conjectured her to be undoubtedly a Moor, and that she could not speak Spanish.

Her companion was now come back from the stable, and told them, "Ladies, I hope you will excuse this gentlewoman from answering any questions, for she is very much a stranger to our language."

—"We are only, sir," answered Lucinda, "making her an offer which civility obliges us to make all strangers, especially of our own sex, that she would make us happy in her company all night, and fare as we do: we will make very much of her, sir, and she shall want for nothing that the house affords."

—"I return you humble thanks, dear madam," answered the stranger, "in the lady's behalf and my own; and I infinitely prize the favour, which the present exigence and the worth of the donors make doubly engaging."—"Is the lady, pray, sir, a Christian or a Moor?" asked Dorothea. "Our charity would make us hope she were the former; but by her attire and silence, we are afraid she is the latter."

—"Outwardly, madam," answers he, "she appears and is a Moor, but in her heart a zealous Christian, which her longing desires of being baptized have expressly testified. I have had no opportunity of having her christened since she left Algiers, which was her habitation and native country; nor has any imminent danger of death as yet obliged her to be brought to the font, before she be better instructed in the principles of our religion; but I hope, by Heaven's assistance, to have her shortly baptized with all the decency suiting her quality, which is much above what her equipage or mine seem to promise."

These words raised in them all a curiosity to be farther informed who the Moor and her conductor were ; but they thought it improper then to put them upon any more particular relation of their fortunes, because they wanted rest and refreshment after their journey. Dorothea, placing the lady by her, begged her to take off her veil. She looked on her companion, as if she required him to let her know what she said ; which, when he had let her understand in the Arabian tongue, joining his own request also, she discovered so charming a face, that Dorothea imagined her more beautiful than Lucinda ; she, on the other hand, fancied her handsomer than Dorothea ; and most of the company believed her more beautiful than both of them. As beauty has always a prerogative, or rather charm, to attract men's inclinations, the whole company dedicated their desires to serve the lovely Moor. Don Ferdinand asked the stranger her name ; he answered, " Lela Zoraida ;" she, hearing him, and guessing what they asked, suddenly replied with great concern, though very gracefully, " No, no Zoraida, Maria, Maria ;" giving them to understand that her name was Maria, and not Zoraida. These words, spoken with so much eagerness, raised a concern in every body, the ladies especially, whose natural tenderness shewed itself by their tears ; and Lucinda, embracing her very lovingly, " Ay, ay," said she, " Maria, Maria ;" which words the Moorish lady repeated by way of answer. " Zoraida Macanige," added she, as much as to say, not Zoraida, but Maria, Maria.

The night coming on, and the innkeeper, by order of Don Ferdinand's friends, having made haste to provide them the best supper he could, the cloth was laid on a long table, there being neither round nor square in the house. Don Quixote, after much ceremony, was prevailed upon to sit at the head ; he desired the Lady Micomicona to sit next him ; and the rest of the company having placed themselves according to their rank and convenience, they eat their supper very heartily. Don Quixote, to raise the diversion, never minded his meat, but inspired with the same spirit that moved him to preach so much to the goat-herds, he began to hold forth in this manner. " Certainly, gentlemen, if we rightly consider it, those who make knight-errantry their profession, often meet with most surprising and stupendous adventures. For what mortal in the world, at this time entering within this castle, and seeing us sit together as we do, will imagine and believe us to be the same persons which in reality we are ? Who is there that can judge, that this lady by my side is the great queen we all know her to be, and that I am that Knight of the Woeful Figure, so universally made known by fame ? It is then no longer to be doubted, but that this exercise and profession surpasses all others that have been invented by man, and is so much the more honourable, as it is more exposed to dangers. Let none presume to tell me that the pen is preferable to the sword ; for be they who they will, I shall tell them they know not what they say : for the reason they give, and on which

chiefly they rely, is, that the labour of the mind exceeds that of the body, and that the exercise of arms depends only on the body, as if the use of them were the business of porters, which requires nothing but much strength. Or, as if this, which we who profess it call chivalry, did not include the acts of fortitude, which depend very much upon the understanding. Or else, as if that warrior, who commands an army or defends a city besieged, did not labour as much with the mind as with the body. If this be not so, let experience teach us whether it be possible by bodily strength to discover or guess the intentions of an enemy. The forming designs, laying of stratagems, overcoming of difficulties, and shunning of dangers, are all works of the understanding, wherein the body has no share. It being therefore evident, that the exercise of arms requires the help of the mind as well as learning, let us see in the next place, whether the scholar or the soldier's mind undergoes the greatest labour. Now this may be the better known, by regarding the end and object each of them aims at ; for that intention is to be most valued, which makes the noblest end its object. The scope and end of learning, I mean human learning (in this place I speak not of divinity, whose aim is to guide souls to heaven, for no other can equal a design so infinite as that) is to give a perfection to distributive justice, bestowing upon every one his due, and to procure and cause good laws to be observed ; an end really generous, great, and worthy of high commendation ; but yet

not equal to that which knight-errantry tends to, whose object and end is peace, which is the greatest blessing man can wish for in this life. And therefore the first good news that the world received, was that the angels brought in the night, which was the beginning of our day, when they sang in the air, Glory to God on high, peace upon earth, and to men good-will. And the only manner of salutation taught by the best Master in heaven, or upon earth, to his friends and favourites, was, that entering any house they should say, Peace be to this house. And at other times he said to them, My peace I give to you, my peace I leave to you, peace be among you. A jewel and legacy worthy of such a donor, a jewel so precious, that without it there can be no happiness either in earth or heaven. This peace is the true end of war ; for arms and war are one and the same thing. Allowing then this truth, that the end of war is peace, and that in this it excels the end of learning, let us now weigh the bodily labours the scholar undergoes, against those the warrior suffers, and then see which are greatest."

The method and language Don Quixote used in delivering himself were such, that none of his hearers at that time looked upon him as a madman. But on the contrary, most of them being gentlemen, to whom the use of arms properly appertains, they gave him a willing attention : and he proceeded in this manner. "These, then, I say, are the sufferings and hardships a scholar endures. First,

poverty, (not that they are all poor, but to urge the worst that may be in this case) and having said he endures poverty, methinks nothing more need be urged to express his misery ; for he that is poor enjoys no happiness, but labours under this poverty in all its parts, at one time in hunger, at another in cold, another in nakedness, and sometimes in all of them together, yet his poverty is not so great, but still he eats, though it be later than the usual hour, and of the scraps of the rich, or, which is the greatest of a scholar's misfortunes, what is called among them *going a sopping* ;\* neither can the scholar miss of somebody's stove or fire-side to sit by, where, though he be not thoroughly heated, yet he may gather warmth, and at last sleep away the night under a roof. I will not touch upon other less material circumstances, as the want of linen, and scarcity of shoes, thinness and baldness of their clothes, and their surfeiting when good fortune throws a feast in their way : this is the difficult and uncouth path they tread, often stumbling and falling, yet rising again and pushing on, till they attain the preferment they aim at ; whither being arrived, we have seen many of them, who, having been carried by a fortunate gale through all these quick-sands, from a chair govern the world ; their hunger being changed into satiety, their cold into comfortable warmth ;

---

\* The author means the sops in porridge, given at the doors of monasteries.

their nakedness into magnificence of apparel; and the mats they used to lie upon, into stately beds of costly silks and softest linen; a reward due to their virtue. But yet their sufferings being compared to those the soldier endures, appear much inferior, as I shall in the next place make out."

## CHAPTER XI.

*A continuation of Don Quixote's curious Discourse upon Arms and Learning.*

" SINCE, speaking of the scholar, we began with his poverty, and its several parts," continued Don Quixote, " let us now observe whether the soldier be any richer than he; and we shall find that poverty itself is not poorer; for he depends on his miserable pay, which he receives but seldom, or perhaps never; or else in that he makes by marauding, with the hazard of his life, and trouble of his conscience. Such is sometimes his want of apparel, that a slashed buff-coat is all his hòiday raiment and shirt; and in the depth of winter being in the open field, he has nothing to cherish him against the sharpness of the season, but the breath of his mouth, which issuing from an empty place, I am persuaded is itself cold, though contrary to the rules of nature. But now see how he expects night to make amends for all these hardships in the bed prepared for him, which unless it be his own fault, never proves too

narrow ; for he may freely lay out as much of the ground as he pleases, and tumble to his content without danger of losing the sheets. But above all, when the day shall come, wherein he is to put in practice the exercise of his profession, and strive to gain some new degree, when the day of battle shall come ; then, as a mark of honour, shall his head be dignified with a cap made of lint, to stop a hole made by a bullet, or be perhaps carried off maimed, at the expence of a leg or arm. And if this do not happen, but that merciful heaven preserve his life and limbs, it may fall out that he shall remain as poor as before, and must run through many encounters and battles, nay always come off victorious, to obtain some little preferment ; and these miracles too are rare ; but, I pray tell me, gentlemen, if ever you made it your observation, how few are those who obtain due rewards in war, in comparison of those numbers that perish ? Doubtless you will answer, that there is no parity between them ; that the dead cannot be reckoned up ; whereas, those who live and are rewarded, may be numbered with three figures.\* It is quite otherwise with scholars, not only those who follow the law, but others also, who all either by hook or by crook get a livelihood, so that though the soldier's sufferings be much greater, yet his reward is much less. To this it may be answered, that it is easier to reward two thousand scholars, than thirty thousand soldiers, because the former are

---

\* i. e. Do not exceed hundreds.

recompensed at the expence of the public, by giving them employments, which of necessity must be allowed on those of their profession, but the latter cannot be gratified otherwise than at the cost of the master that employs them ; yet this very difficulty makes good my argument. But let us lay this matter aside, as a point difficult to be decided, and let us return to the preference due to arms above learning, a subject as yet in debate, each party bringing strong reasons to make out their pretensions. Among others, learning urges, that without it warfare itself could not subsist ; because war, as other things, has its laws, and is governed by them, and laws are the province of learning and scholars. To this objection the soldiers make answer, that without them the laws cannot be maintained, for it is by arms that commonwealths are defended, kingdoms supported, cities secured, the high-way made safe, and the sea delivered from pirates. In short, were it not for them, commonwealths, kingdoms, monarchies, cities, the roads by land, and the waters of the sea, would be subject to the ravages and confusion that attend war while it lasts, and is at liberty to make use of its unbounded power and prerogative. Besides, it is past all controversy, that what costs dearest is, and ought to be most valued. Now for a man to attain to an eminent degree of learning costs him time, watching, hunger, nakedness, dizziness in the head, weakness in the stomach, and other inconveniences, which are the consequences of these, of which I have already in part made mention. But the rising gradually to be a good

soldier, is purchased at the whole expence of all that is required for learning, and that in so surpassing a degree, that there is no comparison betwixt them; because he is every moment in danger of his life. To what danger or distress can a scholar be reduced equal to that of a soldier, who, being besieged in some strong place, and at his post or upon guard in some ravelia or bastion, perceives the enemy carrying on a mine under him, and yet must upon no account remove from thence, or shun the danger which threatens him so near? All he can do, is, to give notice to his commander, that he may counter-mine, but must himself stand still, fearing and expecting, when on a sudden he shall soar to the clouds without wings, and be again cast down headlong against his will. If this danger seem inconsiderable, let us see whether that be not greater when two gallies shock one another with their prows in the midst of the spacious sea. When they have thus grappled, and are clinging together, the soldier is confined to the narrow beak, being a board not above two feet wide; and yet though he sees before him so many ministers of death threatening, as there are pieces of cannon on the other side pointing against him, and not half a pike's length from his body; and being sensible that the first slip of his feet sends him to the bottom of Neptune's dominions; still, for all this, inspired by honour, with an undaunted heart, he stands a mark to so much fire, and endeavours to make his way, by that narrow passage, into the enemy's vessel. But what is most to be admired is, that no sooner one falls, where he

shall never rise till the end of the world, than another steps into the same place ; and if he also drops into the sea, which lies in wait for him like an enemy, another, and after him another, still fills up the place, without suffering any interval of time to separate their deaths ; a resolution and boldness scarce to be paralleled in any other trials of war. Blessed be those happy ages that were strangers to the dreadful fury of these devilish instruments of artillery, whose inventor I am satisfied is now in hell, receiving the reward of his cursed invention, which is the cause that very often a cowardly base hand takes away the life of the bravest gentleman, and that in the midst of that vigour and resolution which animates and inflames the bold, a chance bullet (shot perhaps by one that fled, and was frightened at the very flash the mischievous piece gave, when it went off) coming nobody knows how, or from whence, in a moment puts a period to the brave designs, and the life of one, that deserved to have survived many years. This considered, I could almost say, I am sorry at my heart for having taken upon me this profession of a knight-errant, in so detestable an age ; for though no danger daunts me, yet it affects me to think, whether powder and lead may not deprive me of the opportunity of becoming famous, and making myself known throughout the world by the strength of my arm and dint of my sword. But let heaven order matters as it pleases ; for if I compass my designs, I shall be so much the more honoured by how much the dangers I have exposed myself to, are greater than those the knights-errants of former ages underwent."

All this long preamble Don Quixote made, whilst the company supped, never minding to eat a mouthful, though Sancho Panza had several times advised him to mind his meat, telling him there would be time enough afterwards to talk as he thought fit. Those who heard him were afresh moved with compassion, to see a man, who seemed, in all other respects, to have a sound judgment and clear understanding, so absolutely mad and distracted, when any mention was made of his cursed knight-errantry. The curate told him, he was much in the right, in all he had said for the honour of arms; and that he, though a scholar, and a graduate, was of the same opinion. Supper being ended and the cloth taken away; whilst the innkeeper, his wife, his daughter, and Maritornes, fitted up Don Quixote's loft for the ladies, that they might lie by themselves that night, Don Ferdinand entreated the slave to give them an account of his life; conscious the relation could not choose but be very delightful and surprising, as might be guessed by his coming with Zoraida. The slave answered, he would most willingly comply with their desires, and that he only feared the relation would not give them all the satisfaction he could wish; but that however, rather than disobey, he would do it as well as he could. The curate and all the company thanked him, and made fresh instances to the same effect. Seeing himself courted by so many, "There is no need of entreaties," said he, "for what you may command; therefore," continued he, "give me your attention, and you shall hear a true relation, perhaps not to be paral-

leled by those fabulous stories which are composed with much art and study." This caused all the company to seat themselves, and observe a very strict silence ; and then, with an agreeable and sedate voice, he began in this manner.

## CHAPTER XII.

*Where the Captive relates his Life and Adventures.*

IN the mountains of Leon my family had its first original, and was more kindly dealt withal by nature than by fortune, though my father might pass for rich among the inhabitants of those parts, who are but poorly provided for. To say truth, he had been so, had he had as much industry to preserve, as he had inclination to dissipate his income ; but he had been a soldier, and the years of his youth spent in that employment, had left him in his old age a propensity to spend, under the name of liberality. War is a school where the covetous grow free, and the free prodigal : to see a soldier a miser, is a kind of prodigy which happens but seldom. My father was far from being one of them ; for he passed the bounds of liberality, and came very near the excesses of prodigality ; a thing which cannot suit well with a married life, where the children ought to succeed to the estate, as well as name of the family. We were three of us, all at man's estate ; and my father, finding that the only way (as he said) to

curb his squandering inclination, was to dispossess himself of that which maintained it, his estate, (without which Alexander himself must have been put to it) he called us one day all three to him in his chamber, and spoke to us in the following manner.

" My sons, to persuade you that I love you, I need only tell you I am your father, and you my children ; and on the other side, you have reason to think me unkind, considering how careless I am in preserving what should one day be yours ; but to convince you, however, that I have the bowels of a parent, I have taken a resolution, which I have well weighed and considered for many days. You are all now of an age to chuse the kind of life you each of you incline to ; or, at least, to enter upon some employment that may one day procure you both honour and profit : therefore I design to divide all I have into four parts, of which I will give three among you, and retain the fourth for myself, to maintain me in my old age, as long as it shall please heaven to continue me in this life. After that each of you shall have received his part, I could wish you would follow one of the employments I shall mention to you, every one as he finds himself inclined. There is a proverb in our tongue, which I take to contain a great deal of truth, as generally these sorts of sayings do, being short sentences framed upon observation and long experience. This proverb runs thus, Either the church, the sea, or the court. As if it should plainly say, that whosoever desires to thrive must follow one of these three ; either be a churchman, or a merchant and try his

fortune at sea, or enter into the service of his prince in the court : for another proverb says, that King's chaff is better than other men's corn. I say this, because I would have one of you follow his studies, another I desire should be a merchant, and the third should serve the king in his wars ; because it is a thing of some difficulty to get an entrance at court ; and though war does not immediately procure riches, yet it seldom fails of giving honour and reputation. Within eight days time I will give each of you your portion, and not wrong you of a farthing of it, as you shall see by experience. Now therefore tell me if you are resolved to follow my advice about your settling in the world." And turning to me, as the eldest, he bid me answer first.

I told him, that he ought not upon our account to divide or lessen his estate, or way of living ; that we were young men, and could shift in the world ; and at last I concluded, that for my part I would be a soldier, and serve God and the king in that honourable profession. My second brother made the same regardful offer, and chose to go to the Indies ; resolving to lay out in goods the share that should be given him here. The youngest, and, I believe, the wisest of us all, said he would be a churchman ; and in order to it, go to Salamanca, and there finish his studies. After this, my father embraced us all three, and in a few days performed what he had promised ; and, as I remember, it was three thousand ducats a-piece, which he gave us in money ; for we had an uncle who bought all the estate, and paid for it in ready money, that it might not go out

of the family. A little after, we all took leave of my father ; and at parting I could not forbear thinking it a kind of inhumanity to leave the old gentleman in so straight a condition : I prevailed with him therefore to accept of two thousand of my three, the remainder being sufficient to make up a soldier's equipage. My example worked upon my other brothers, and they each of them presented him with a thousand ducats ; so that my father remained with four thousand ducats in ready money, and three thousand more in land, which he chose to keep and not sell out-right. To be short, we took our leave of my father and the uncle I have mentioned, not without much grief and tears on all sides ; they particularly recommending us to let them know by all opportunities our good or ill fortune. We promised to do so, and having received the blessing of our old father, one of us went straight to Salamanca, the other to Sevil, and I to Alicant, where I was informed of a Genoese ship, which was loading wood for Genoa.

This year makes two and twenty since I first left my father's house, and in all that time, though I have writ several letters, I have not had the least news, either of him, or of my brothers. And now I will relate, in few words, my own adventures in all that course of years. I took shipping at Alicant, arrived safe and with a good passage at Genoa, from thence I went to Milan, where I bought my equipage, resolving to go and enter myself in the army of Piedmont ; but being come as far as Alexandria de la Paille, I was informed that the great Duke of

Alva was passing into Flanders with an army ; this made me alter my first resolution. I followed him, and was present at all his engagements, as well as at the deaths of the Counts Egmont and Horne ; and at last I had a pair of colours under a famous captain of Guadalajara, whose name was Diego de Urbina. Some time after my arrival in Flanders, there came news of the league concluded by Pope Pius V. of happy memory, in junction with Spain, against the common enemy the Turk, who at that time had taken the island of Cyprus from the Venetians ; which was an unfortunate and lamentable loss to Christendom. It was also certain, that the general of this holy league was the most serene Don Juan of Austria, natural brother to our good King Don Philip. The great fame of the preparations for this war excited in me a vehement desire of being present at the engagement, which was expected to follow these preparations ; and although I had certain assurance, and, as it were, an earnest of my being advanced to be a captain upon the first vacancy : yet I resolved to leave all those expectations, and return, as I did, to Italy. My good fortune was such, that I arrived just about the same time that Don Juan of Austria landed at Genoa, in order to go to Naples, and join the Venetian fleet, as he did at Messina. In short, I was at that great action of the battle of Lepanto, being a captain of foot, to which post my good fortune, more than my desert, had now advanced me ; and that day, which was so happy to all Christendom, because the world was then disabused of the error they had entertained,

that the Turk was invincible by sea; that day, I say, in which the pride of the Ottomans was first broke, and which was so happy to all Christians, even to those who died in the fight, who were more so than those who remained alive and conquerors, I alone was the unhappy man; since, instead of a naval crown, which I might have hoped for in the time of the Romans, I found myself that very night a slave, with irons on my feet, and manacles on my hands. The thing happened thus: Vehali, King of Algiers, a brave and bold pirate; having boarded and taken the Capitana galley of Malta, in which only three knights were left alive, and those desperately wounded, the galley of Joan Andrea Doria bore up to succour them; in this galley I was embarked with my company, and doing my duty on this occasion, I leaped into the enemy's galley, which getting loose from ours, that intended to board the Algerine, my soldiers were hindered from following me, and I remained alone among a great number of enemies; whom not being able to resist, I was taken after having received several wounds; and as you have heard already, Vehali having escaped with all his squadron, I found myself his prisoner; and was the only afflicted man among so many joyful ones, and the only captive among so many free; for on that day above 15000 Christians, who rowed in the Turkish galleys, obtained their long-wished-for liberty. I was carried to Constantinople, where the Grand Seignor Sélim made Vehali, my master, general of the sea, he having behaved himself very well in the battle, and brought away with him the

great flag of the order of Malta, as a proof of his valour.

The second year of my captivity, I was a slave in the Capitana galley at Navarino ; and I took notice of the Christians' fault, in letting slip the opportunity they had of taking the whole Turkish fleet in that port ; and all the Janisaries and Algerine pirates did so expect to be attacked, that they had made all in readiness to escape on shore without fighting ; so great was the terror they had of our fleet : but it pleased God to order it otherwise, not by any fault of the Christian general, but for the sins of Christendom, and because it is his will we should always have some enemies to chastise us. Vehali made his way to Modon, which is an island not far from Navarino, and there landing his men, fortified the entrance of the harbour, remaining in safety there till Don Juan was forced to return home with his fleet. In this expedition, the galley called La Presa, of which Barbarossa's own son was captain, was taken by the admiral galley of Naples, called the Wolf, which was commanded by that thunder-bolt of war, that fathier of the soldiers, that happy and never-conquered captain, Don Alvaro de Bacan, Marquis of Santa Cruz ; and I cannot omit the manner of taking this galley. The son of Barbarossa was very cruel, and used his slaves with great inhumanity ; they perceiving that the Wolf-galley got of them in the chace, all of a sudden laid by their oars, and seizing on their commander, as he was walking between them on the deck, and call-

ing to them to row hard ; they passed him on from hand to hand to one another, from one end of the galley to the other, and gave him such blows in the handling him, that before he got back to the main-mast, his soul had left his body, and was fled to hell. This, as I said, was the effect of his cruelty, and their hatred.

After this we returned to Constantinople ; and the next year, which was 1573, news came that Don Juan of Austria had taken Tunis and its kingdom from the Turks, and given the possession of it to Muley Hamid, having thereby defeated all the hopes of reigning of Muley Hamid, one of the cruellest, and withal one of the bravest Moors in the world. The Grand Seignor was troubled at this loss, and, using his wonted artifices with the Christians, he struck up a peace with the Venetians, who were much more desirous than he of it.

The year after, which was 1574, he attacked the Goletta, and the fort which Don Juan had begun, but not above half finished, before Tunis. All this while I was a galley slave, without any hopes of liberty ; at least, I could not promise myself to obtain it by way of ransom ; for I was resolved not to write my father the news of my misfortune. La Goletta \* and the fort were both taken, after some resistance ; the Turkish army, consisting of 75,000 Turks in pay, and above 400,000 Moors and Arabs

---

\* The Goletta is a fortress in the Mediterranean ; between that sea and the lake of Tunis : In 1535 Charles V. took it by storm.

out of all Africa near the sea ; with such provisions of war of all kinds, and so many pioneers, that they might have covered the Goletta and the fort with earth by handfuls. The Goletta was first taken, though always before reputed impregnable ; and it was not lost by any fault of its defenders, who did all that could be expected from them ; but because it was found by experience, that it was practicable to make trenches in that sandy soil, which was thought to have water under it within two foot ; but the Turks sunk above two yards and found none ; by which means, filling sacks with sand, and laying them on one another, they raised them so high, that they over-topt and commanded the fort, in which none could be safe, nor shew themselves upon the walls. It has been the opinion of most men, that we did ill to shut ourselves up in the Goletta ; and that we ought to have been drawn out to hinder their landing ; but they who say so, talk without experience, and at random, of such things ; for if in all there were not above 7000 men in the Goletta and the fort, how could so small a number, though never so brave, take the open field against such forces as those of the enemies ? And how is it possible that a place can avoid being taken, which can have no relief, particularly being besieged by such numbers, and those in their own country ? But it seemed to many others, and that is also my opinion, that God Almighty favoured Spain most particularly, in suffering that sink of iniquity and misery, as well as that sponge and perpetual drain of treasure, to be

destroyed. For infinite sums of money were spent there to no purpose, without any other design than to preserve the memory of one of the Emperor's, (Charles the Fifth's) conquests ; as if it had been necessary to support the eternity of his glory, which will be permanent, that those stones should remain in being. The fort was likewise lost, but the Turks got it foot by foot ; for the soldiers who defended it, sustained two-and-twenty assaults, and in them killed above 25,000 of those barbarians ; and when it was taken, of 300 which were left alive, there was not one man unwounded ; a certain sign of the bravery of the garrison, and of their skill in defending places. There was likewise taken, by composition, a small fort in the midst of a lake, which was under the command of Don John Zanoguerra, a gentleman of Valencia, and a soldier of great renown. Don Pedro Puerto Carrero, General of the Goletta, was taken prisoner, and was so afflicted at the loss of the place, that he died of grief by the way, before he got to Constantinople, whither they were carrying him. They took also prisoner the commander of the fort, whose name was Gabriel Cerbellen, a Milanese, a great engineer, as well as a valiant soldier. Several persons of quality were killed in those two fortresses, and amongst the rest was Pagan Doria, the brother of the famous John Andrea Doria, a generous and noble-hearted gentleman, as well appeared by his liberality to that brother ; and that which made his death more worthy of compassion, was, that he received it from some Arabs, to whom he had committed his safety after

the loss of the fort, they having promised to carry him disguised in a Moor's habit to Tarbaca, which is a small fort held on that coast by the Genoese, for the diving for coral ; but they cut off his head, and brought it to the Turkish General, who made good to them our Spanish proverb, that the treason pleases; but the traitors are odious; for he ordered them to be hanged up immediately, for not having brought him alive.

Amongst the Christians which were taken in the fort, there was one Don Pedro de Aguilar, of some place in Andalusia, and who was an ensign in the place; a very brave, and a very ingenious man, and one who had a rare talent in poetry. I mention him, because it was his fortune to be a slave in the same galley with me, and chained to the same bench. Before he left the port he made two sonnets, by way of epitaph for the Goletta, and the fort, which I must beg leave to repeat here, having learned them by heart, and I believe they will rather divert than tire the company.—When the captive named Don Pedro de Aguilar, Don Ferdinand looked upon his companions, and they all smiled; and when he talked of the sonnets, one of them said, “ Before you go on to repeat the sonnets, I desire, sir, you would tell me what became of that Don Pedro de Aguilar, whom you have mentioned.”—“ All that I know of him,” answered the slave, “ is, that after having been two years in Constantinople, he made his escape disguised like an Arnaut,\* and in company of a

---

\* A trooper of Epirus, Dalmatia, or some of the adjacent countries.

Greek spy ; but I cannot tell whether he obtained his liberty or no, though I believe he did, because about a year after I saw the same Greek in Constantinople, but had not an opportunity to ask him about the success of his journey."—" Then I can tell you," replied the gentleman, "that the Don Pedro you speak of is my brother, and is at present at home, married, rich, and has three children."—" God be thanked," said the slave, " for the favours he has bestowed on him ; for in my mind there is no felicity equal to that of recovering one's lost liberty."—" And moreover," added the same gentleman, " I can say the sonnets you mentioned, which my brother made."—" Pray say them then," replied the slave, " for I question not but you can repeat them better than I."—" With all my heart," answered the gentleman. " That upon the Goletta was thus.

### CHAPTER XIII.

*The Story of the Captive continued.*

#### A SONNET.

" Blest souls, discharged of life's oppressive weight,  
Whose virtue proved your passport to the skies ;  
You there procured a more propitious fate,  
When for your faith you bravely fell to rise.

" When pious rage, diffused through every vein,  
On this ungrateful shore inflamed your blood ;  
Each drop you lost, was bought with crowds of slain,  
Whose vital purple swell'd the nebb'ring flood.

Though crush'd by ruins, and by odds, you claim  
 That perfect glory, that immortal fame,  
 Which, like true heroes, nobly you pursued ;  
 On these you seized, even when of life deprived,  
 For still your courage even your lives survived ;  
 And sure 'tis conquest thus to be subdued."

"I know it is just as you repeat it," said the captive."—"Well then," said the gentleman, I will give you now that which was made upon the fort, if I can remember it.

## A SONNET.

"Amidst these barren fields, and ruin'd tow'rs,  
 The bed of honour of the fallen brave,  
 Three thousand champions of the Christian powers  
 Found a new life, and triumph in the grave.

"Long did their arms their haughty foes repel,  
 Yet strew'd the fields with slaughter'd heaps in vain ;  
 O'ercome by toils, the pious heroes fell,  
 Or but survived more nobly to be slain.

"This dismal soil, so fam'd in ills of old,  
 In every age was fatal to the bold,  
 The seat of horror, and the warrior's tomb !  
 Yet hence to heaven more worth was ne'er resign'd  
 Than these display'd ; nor has the earth combined,  
 Resumed more noble bodies in her womb."

The sonnets were applauded, and the captive was pleased to hear such good news of his friend and companion. After that he pursued his relation in these terms.

The Turks ordered the dismantling of the Goliatta, the fort being razed to their hand by the siege ; and yet the mines they made could not blow up the old walls, which, nevertheless, were always thought the weakest part of the place ; but the new fortification, made by the engineer Fratin, came easily down. In fine, the Turkish fleet returned in triumph to Constantinople, where, not long after, my master Vehali died, whom the Turks used to call Vehali Fartax, which, in Turkish, signifies the scabby renegade, as indeed he was ; and the Turks give names among themselves, either from some virtue, or some defect that is in them ; and this happens because there are but four families descended from the Ottoman family ; all the rest, as I have said, take their names from some defect of the body, or some good quality of the mind. This scabby slave was at the oar in one of the Grand Seignor's galleys for fourteen years, till he was four and thirty years old ; at which time he turned renegade, to be revenged of a Turk, who gave him a box on the ear, as he was chained to the oar, forsaking his religion for revenge ; after which he shewed so much valour and conduct, that he came to be King of Algiers, and Admiral of the Turkish Fleet, which is the third command in the whole empire. He was a Calabrian by birth, and of a mild disposition towards his slaves, as also of good morals to the rest of the world. He had above three thousand slaves of his own, all which after his death were divided, as he had ordered by his will, between the Grand Seignor, his sons and his renegades.

I fell to the share of a Venetian renegade, who was a cabin-boy in a Venetian ship which was taken by Vehali, who loved him so, that he was one of his favourite boys ; and he came at last to prove one of the cruellest renegades that ever was known. His name was Azanaga, and he obtained such riches, as to rise by them to be King of Algiers ; and with him I left Constantinople, with some satisfaction to think, at least, that I was in a place so near Spain, not because I could give advice to any friend of my misfortunes, but because I hoped to try whether I should succeed better in Algiers than I had done in Constantinople, where I had tried a thousand ways of running away, but could never execute any of them, which I hoped I should compass better in Algiers, for hopes never forsook me upon all the disappointments I met with in the design of recovering my liberty. By this means I kept myself alive, shut up in a prison or house, which the Turks call a bagnio, where they keep their Christian slaves, as well those of the king, as those who belong to private persons, and also those who are called El Almacen, that is, who belong to the public, and are employed by the city in works that belong to it. These latter do very difficultly obtain their liberty ; for having no particular master, but belonging to the public, they can find nobody to treat with about their ransom, though they have money to pay it. The king's slaves, which are ransomable, are not obliged to go out to work as the others do, except their ransom stays too long before it comes ; for then to hasten it, they make them work, and fetch

wood with the rest, which is no small labour. I was one of those who were to be ransomed ; for when they knew I had been a captain, though I told them the impossibility I was in of being redeemed, because of my poverty, yet they put me among the gentlemen that were to be ransomed, and to that end they put me on a slight chain, rather as a mark of distinction, than to restrain me by it ; and so I passed my life in that bagnio, with several other gentlemen of quality, who expected their ransom ; and, though hunger and nakedness might, as it did often, afflict us, yet nothing gave us such affliction, as to hear and see the excessive cruelties with which our master used the other Christian slaves ; he would hang one one day, then impale another, cut off the ears of a third ; and this upon such slight occasions, that often the Turks would own, that he did it only for the pleasure of doing it, and because he was naturally an enemy to mankind. Only one Spanish soldier knew how to deal with him, his name was Saavedra ; who though he had done many things which will not easily be forgotten by the Turks, yet all to gain his liberty, his master never gave him a blow, nor used him ill either in word or deed ; and yet we were always afraid that the least of his pranks would make him be impaled ; nay, he himself sometimes was afraid of it too : and if it were not for taking up too much of your time, I could tell such passages of him, as would divert the company much better than the relation of my adventures, and cause more wonder in them.—But to go on ; I say that the windows of a very rich Moor's house looked upon the court

of our prison; which indeed, according to the custom of the country, were rather peeping-holes than windows, and yet they had also lattices or jealousies on the inside.

It happened one day, that being upon a kind of terrace of our prison, with only three of my comrades, diverting ourselves as well as we could, by trying who could leap farthest in his chains, all the other Christians being gone out to work, I chanced to look up to those windows, and saw that out of one of them there appeared a long cane, and to it was a bit of linen tied; and the cane was moved up and down, as if it had expected that some of us should lay hold of it. We all took notice of it, and one of us went and stood just under it, to see if they would let it fall; but just as he came to it, the cane was drawn up, and shaked to and fro sideways, as if they had made the same sign, as people do with their head when they deny. He retired upon that, and the same motion was made with it as before. Another of my comrades advanced, and had the same success as the former; the third man was used just as the rest; which I seeing, resolved to try my fortune too; and as I came under the cane, it fell at my feet: immediately I untied the linen, within which was a knot, which being opened, shewed us about ten zianins, which is a sort of gold of base alloy, used by the Moors, each of which is worth about two crowns of our money. It is not to be much questioned, whether the discovery was not as pleasant as surprising; we were in admiration, and I more particularly, not being able to guess whence

this good fortune came to us, especially to me ; for it was plain I was more meant than any of my comrades, since the cane was let go to me when it was refused to them. I took my money, broke the cane, and going upon the terrace saw a very fine white hand that opened and shut the window with haste. By this we imagined that some woman who lived in that house had done us this favour ; and to return our thanks, we bowed ourselves after the Moorish fashion, with our arms across our breasts. A little after there appeared out of the same window, a little cross made of cane, which immediately was pulled in again. This confirmed us in our opinion, that some Christian woman was a slave in that house, and that it was she that took pity on us ; but the whiteness of the hand, and the richness of the bracelets upon the arm, which we had a glimpse of, seemed to destroy that thought again ; and then we believed it was some Christian woman turned Mahometan, whom their masters often marry, and think themselves very happy ; for our women are more valued by them than the women of their own country. But in all this guessing we were far enough from finding out the truth of the case ; however, we resolved to be very diligent in observing the window, which was our north-star. There passed above fifteen days before we saw either the hand or cane, or any other sign whatsoever ; though in all that time we endeavoured to find out who lived in that house, and if there were in it any Christian woman who was a renegade ; yet all we could discover amounted to only this, that the house belonged to one of

the chief Moors, a very rich man, called Agimorato, who had been Alcayde of the Pata, which is an office much valued among them. But when we least expected our golden shower would continue, out of that window we saw on a sudden the cane appear again, with another piece of linen, and a bigger knot; and this was just at a time when the bagnio was without any other of the slaves in it. We all tried our fortunes as the first time, and it succeeded accordingly, for the cane was let go to none but me. I untied the knot, and found in it forty crowns of Spanish gold, with a paper written in Arabic, and at the top of the paper was a great cross. I kissed the cross, took the crowns, and returning to the terrace, we all made our Moorish reverences; the hand appeared again, and I having made signs that I would read the paper, the window was shut. We remained all overjoyed and astonished at what had happened, and were extreme desirous to know the contents of the paper; but none of us understood Arabic, and it was yet more difficult to find out a proper interpreter. At last I resolved to trust a renegade of Murcia, who had shewn me great proofs of his kindness. We gave one another mutual assurances, and on his side he was obliged to keep secret all that I should reveal to him; for the renegades, who have thoughts of returning to their own country, use to get certificates from such persons of quality as are slaves in Barbary, in which they make a sort of an affidavit, that such a one, a renegade, is an honest man, and has always been kind to the Christians, and has a mind to make his escape on

the first occasion. Some there are who procure these certificates with an honest design, and remain among Christians as long as they live ; but others get them on purpose to make use of them when they go a pirating on the Christian shores ; for then if they are shipwrecked or taken, they shew these certificates, and say, that thereby may be seen the intention with which they came in the Turks' company ; to wit, to get an opportunity of returning to Christendom. By this means they escape the first fury of the Christians, and are seemingly reconciled to the church without being hurt ; afterwards they take their time, and return to Barbary to be what they were before.

One of these renegades was my friend, and he had certificates from us all, by which we gave him much commendation : but if the Moors had catched him with those papers about him, they would have burnt him alive. I knew that not only he understood the Arabic tongue, but also that he could both speak and write it currently. But yet before I resolved to trust him entirely, I bid him read me that paper, which I had found by chance. He opened it, and was a good while looking upon it, and construing it to himself. I asked him if he understood it ; he said, Yes, very well ; and that, if I would give him pen, ink, and paper, he would translate it word for word. We furnished him with what he desired, and he went to work. Having finished his translation, he said, " All that I have here put into Spanish is word for word what is in the Arabic ; only observe,

that wherever the paper says *Lela Marien*, it means our Lady the Virgin Mary." The contents were thus :

" When I was a child, my father had a slave, who taught me in my tongue the Christian worship, and told me a great many things of Lela Marien. The Christian slave died, and I am sure she went not to the fire, but is with Alla, for I have seen her twice since ; and she bid me go to the land of the Christians to see Lela Marien, who had a great kindness for me. I do not know what is the matter ; but though I have seen many Christians out of this window, none has appeared to me so much a gentleman as thyself. I am very handsome and young, and can carry with me a great deal of money, and other riches. Consider whether thou canst bring it to pass that we may escape together, and then thou shalt be my husband in thy own country, if thou art willing ; but if thou art not, it is all one, Lela Marien will provide me a husband. I wrote this myself ; have a care to whom thou givest it to read ; do not trust any Moor, because they are all treacherous ; and in this I am much perplexed, and could wish there were not a necessity of trusting any one ; because if my father should come to know it, he would certainly throw me into a well, and cover me over with stones. I will tie a thread to a cane, and with that thou mayest fasten thy answer ; and if thou canst not find any one to write in Arabick, make me understand thy meaning by signs, for Lela Marien will help me to guess it. She and Alla keep

thee, as well as this cross, which I often kiss, as the Christian slave bid me do."

You may imagine, gentlemen, that we were in admiration at the contents of this paper, and withal overjoyed at them, which we expressed so openly, that the renegade came to understand that the paper was not found by chance, but that it was really writ by some one among us; and accordingly he told us his suspicion, and desired us to trust him entirely, and that he would venture his life with us to procure us our liberty. Having said this, he pulled a brass crucifix out of his bosom, and, with many tears, swore by the God which it represented, and in whom he, though a wicked sinner, did firmly believe, to be true and faithful to us with all secrecy in what we should impart to him; for he guessed, that by the means of the woman who had writ that letter, we might all of us recover our lost liberty; and he, in particular, might obtain what he had so long wished for, to be received again into the bosom of his mother the church, from whom, for his sins, he had been cut off as a rotten member. The renegade pronounced all this with so many tears, and such signs of repentance, that we were all of opinion to trust him, and tell him the whole truth of the business. We shewed him the little window out of which the cane used to appear, and he from thence took good notice of the house, in order to inform himself who lived in it. We next agreed that it would be necessary to answer the Moorish lady's note. So, immediately the renegade

writ down what I dictated to him, which was exactly as I shall relate ; for I have not forgot the least material circumstance of this adventure, nor can forget them as long as I live. The words then were these.

“ The true Alla keep thee, my dear lady, and that blessed Virgin, which is the true mother of God, and has inspired thee with the design of going to the land of the Christians. Do thou pray her that she would be pleased to make thee understand how thou shalt execute what she has commanded thee ; for she is so good that she will do it. On my part, and on that of the Christians who are with me, I offer to do for thee all we are able, even to the hazard of our lives. Fail not to write to me, and give me notice of thy resolution, for I will always answer thee ; the Great Alla having given us a Christian slave, who can read and write thy language, as thou mayest perceive by this letter ; so that thou mayest, without fear, give us notice of all thy intentions. As for what thou sayest, that as soon as thou shalt arrive in the land of the Christians, thou designest to be my wife, I promise thee on the word of a good Christian, to take thee for my wife ; and thou mayest be assured that the Christians perform their promises better than the Moors. Alla and his mother Mary be thy guard, my dear lady.”

Having writ and closed this note, I waited two days till the bagnio was empty, and then I went up

on the terrace, the ordinary place of our conversation, to see if the cane appeared, and it was not long before it was stirring. As soon as it appeared I shewed my note, that the thread might be put to the cane, but I found that was done to my hand ; and the cane being let down, I fastened the note to it. Not long after the knot was let fall, and I, taking it up, found in it several pieces of gold and silver, above fifty crowns, which gave us infinite content, and fortified our hopes of obtaining at last our liberty. That evening our renegade came to us, and told us, he had found out that the master of that house was the same Moor we had been told of, called Agimorato, extremely rich, and who had one only daughter to inherit all his estate ; that it was the report of the whole city that she was the handsomest maid in all Barbary, having been demanded in marriage by several bassas and viceroys, but that she had always refused to marry. He also told us, that he had learned she had a Christian slave who was dead, all which agreed with the contents of the letter. We immediately held a council with the renegade, about the manner we should use to carry off the Moorish lady, and go all together to Christendom ; when at last we agreed to expect the answer of Zoraida, for that is the name of the lady who now desires to be called Mary ; as well knowing she could best advise the overcoming all the difficulties that were in our way ; and after this resolution, the renegade assured us again, that he would lose his life, or deliver us out of captivity.

The bagnio was four days together full of peo-

ple, and all that time the cane was invisible ; but as soon as it returned to its solitude, the cane appeared, with a knot much bigger than ordinary ; having untied it, I found in it a letter, and a hundred crowns in gold. The renegade happened that day to be with us, and we gave him the letter to read ; which he said contained these words :—

“ I cannot tell, sir, how to contrive that we may go together for Spain ; neither has Lela Marien told it me, though I have earnestly asked it of her. All I can do is to furnish you out of this window with a great deal of riches. Buy your ransom and your friends’ with that, and let one of you go to Spain, and buy a bark there, and come and fetch the rest. As for me, you shall find me in my father’s garden out of town, by the sea-side, not far from Babasso gate, where I am to pass all the summer with my father and my maids ; from which you may take me without fear, in the night-time, and carry me to your bark ; but remember thou art to be my husband, and if thou faillest in that, I will desire Lela Marien to chastise thee. If thou canst not trust one of thy friends to go for the bark, pay thy own ransom and go thyself ; for I trust thou wilt return sooner than another, since thou art a gentleman and a Christian. Find out my father’s garden, and I will take care to watch when the bagnio is empty, and let thee have more moneys. Alla keep my dear lord.”

These were the contents of the second letter we  
VOL. II. R

received. Upon the reading of it, every one of us offered to be the man that should go and buy the bark, promising to return with all punctuality ; but the renegade opposed that proposition, and said, he would never consent that any one of us should obtain his liberty before the rest ; because experience had taught him, that people once free do not perform what they promise when captives ; and that some slaves of quality had often used that remedy, to send one either to Valencia or Majorca, with money to buy a bark, and come back and fetch the rest ; but that they never returned, because the joy of having obtained their liberty, and the fear of losing it again, made them forget what they had promised, and cancelled the memory of all obligations. To confirm which he related to us a strange story, which had happened in those parts, as there often does among the slaves. After this, he said, that all that could be done, was for him to buy a bark with the money which should redeem one of us ; that he could buy one in Algiers, and pretend to turn merchant, and deal between Algiers and Tetuan ; by which means, he being master of the vessel, might easily find out some way of getting us out of the bagnio, and taking us on board ; and especially if the Moorish lady did what she promised, and gave us money to pay all our ransoms ; for, being free, we might embark even at noon-day ; but the greatest difficulty would be, that the Moors do not permit renegades to keep any barks but large ones, fit to cruise upon Christians ; for they believe that a renegade, particularly a Spaniard, seldom buys a

bark, but with a design of returning to his own country. That, however, he knew how to obviate that difficulty, by taking a Tagarin Moor for his partner both in the bark and trade, by which means he should still be master of her, and then all the rest would be easy. We durst not oppose this opinion, though we had more inclination every one of us to go to Spain for a bark, as the lady had advised ; but were afraid that if we contradicted him, as we were at his mercy, he might betray us, and bring our lives to danger ; particularly if the business of Zoraida should be discovered, for whose liberty and life we would have given all ours ; so we determined to put ourselves under the protection of God and the renegade. At the same time we answered Zoraida, telling her, that we would do all she advised, which was very well, and just as if Le-la Marien herself had instructed her ; and that now it depended on her alone to give us the means of bringing this design to pass. I promised her once more to be her husband. After this, in two days that the bagnio happened to be empty, she gave us, by the means of the cane, two thousand crowns of gold ; and withal a letter, in which she let us know, that the next Juma, which is their Friday, she was to go to her father's garden, and that, before she went, she would give us more money ; and if we had not enough, she would, upon our letting her know it, give us what we should think sufficient ; for her father was so rich that he would hardly miss it ; and so much the less, because he entrusted her with the

keys of all his treasure. We presently gave the renegade five hundred crowns to buy the bark, and I paid my own ransom with eight hundred crowns, which I put into the hands of a merchant at Valencia, then in Algiers, who made the bargain with the king, and had me to his house upon parole, to pay the money upon the arrival of the first bark from Valencia ; for if he had paid down the money immediately, the king might have suspected the money had been ready, and lain some time in Algiers, and that the merchant for his own profit had concealed it ; and, in short, I durst not trust my master with ready money, knowing his distrustful and malicious nature. The Thursday preceding that Friday that Zoraida was to go to the garden, she let us have a thousand crowns more ; desiring me, at the same time, that if I paid my ransom, I would find out her father's garden, and contrive some way of seeing her there. I answered in few words, that I would do as she desired, and she should only take care to recommend us to Lela Marien, by those prayers which the Christian slave had taught her. Having done this, order was taken to have the ransom of my three friends paid also ; lest they, seeing me at liberty, and themselves not so, though there was money to set them free, should be troubled in mind, and give way to the temptation of the devil, in doing something that might redound to the prejudice of Zoraida ; for though the consideration of their quality ought to have given me security of their honour, yet I did not think it proper to run the least hazard in the matter ; so they were redeem-

ed in the same manner, and by the same merchant, that I was, who had the money before-hand ; but we never discovered to him the remainder of our intrigue, as not being willing to risk the danger there was in so doing.

## CHAPTER XIV.

*The Adventures of the Captive continued.*

OUR renegade had in a fortnight's time bought a very good bark, capable of carrying above thirty people ; and to give no suspicion of any other design, he undertook a voyage to a place upon the coast called Sargel, about thirty leagues to the eastward of Algiers towards Oran, where there is a great trade for dried figs. He made his voyage two or three times in company with the Tagarin Moor his partner. Those Moors are called in Barbary Tagarins, who were driven out of Arragon ; as they call those of Granada, Mudajares ; and the same in the kingdom of Fez are called Elches, and are the best soldiers that prince has.

Every time he passed with his bark along the coast, he used to cast anchor in a little bay that was not above two bow-shot from the garden where Zoraida expected us ; and there he used to exercise the Moors that rowed, either in making the Sala, which is a ceremony among them, or in some other employment ; by which he practised in jest what he was resolved

to execute in earnest. So sometimes he would go to the garden of Zoraida and beg some fruit, and her father would give him some, though he did not know him. He had a mind to find an occasion to speak to Zoraida, and tell her, as he since owned to me, that he was the man who by my order was to carry her to the land of the Christians, and that she might depend upon it ; but he could never get an opportunity of doing it, because the Moorish and Turkish women never suffer themselves to be seen by any of their own nation, but by their husband, or by his or their father's command ; but as for the Christian slaves, they let them see them, and that more familiarly than perhaps could be wished. I should have been very sorry that the renegade had seen or spoke to Zoraida, for it must needs have troubled her infinitely to see that her business was trusted to a renegade ; and God Almighty, who governed our design, ordered it so, that the renegade was disappointed. He in the mean time seeing how securely, and without suspicion, he went and came along the coast, staying where and when he pleased by the way, and that his partner the Tagarin Moor was of his mind in all things ; that I was at liberty, and that there wanted nothing but some Christians to help us to row ; bid me consider whom I intended to carry with me besides those who were ransomed, and that I should make sure of them for the first Friday, because he had pitched on that day for our departure. Upon notice of this resolution, I spoke to twelve lusty Spaniards, good rowers, and those who might easiest get out of the city : it was a

great fortune that we got so many in such a conjuncture, because there were above twenty sail of rovers gone out, who had taken aboard most of the slaves fit for the oar ; and we had not had these, but that their master happened to stay at home that summer, to finish a galley he was building to cruize with, and was then upon the stocks. I said no more to them, than only they should steal out of the town in the evening upon the next Friday, and stay for me upon the way that led to Agimorato's garden. I spoke to every one by himself, and gave each of them order to say no more to any other Christian they should see, than that they staid for me there. Having done this, I had another thing of the greatest importance to bring to pass, which was to give Zoraida notice of our design, and how far we had carried it, that she might be ready at a short warning, and not to be surprised if we came upon the house on a sudden, and even before she could think that the Christian bark could be come. This made me resolve to go to the garden to try if it were possible to speak to her : so one day, upon pretence of gathering a few herbs, I entered the garden, and the first person I met was her father, who spoke to me in the language used all over the Turkish dominions, which is a mixture of all the Christian and Moorish languages, by which we understand one another from Constantinople to Algiers, and asked me what I looked for in his garden, and who I belonged to ? I told him I was a slave of Arnaute Mami (this man I knew was his intimate friend,) and that I wanted a few herbs to make up a sallad. He

then asked me if I were a man to be redeemed or no, and how much my master asked for me? During these questions, the beautiful Zoraida came out of the garden-house hard by, having descried me a good while before ; and as the Moorish women make no difficulty of shewing themselves to the Christian slaves, she drew near, without scruple, to the place where her father and I were talking ; neither did her father shew any dislike of her coming, but called to her to come nearer. It would be hard for me to express here the wonderful surprise and astonishment that the beauty, the rich dress, and the charming air of my beloved Zoraida put me in : she was all bedecked with pearls, which hung thick upon her head and about her neck and arms. Her feet and legs were naked, after the custom of that country, and she had upon her ankles a kind of bracelet of gold, and set with such rich diamonds that her father valued them, as she since told me, at ten thousand pistoles a pair ; and those about her wrists were of the same value. The pearls were of the best sort, for the Moorish women delight much in them, and have more pearls of all sorts than any nation. Her father was reputed to have the finest in Algiers, and to be worth, besides, above two hundred thousand Spanish crowns ; of all which, the lady you here see was then mistress ; but now is only so of me. What she yet retains of beauty after all her sufferings, may help you to guess at her wonderful appearance in the midst of her prosperity. The beauty of some ladies has its days and times, and is more or less according to accidents or passions, which natu-

rally raise or diminish the lustre of it, and sometimes quite extinguish it. All I can say is, at that time she appeared to me the best-drest and most beautiful woman I had ever seen ; to which, adding the obligations I had to her, she passed with me for a goddess from heaven, descended upon earth for my relief and happiness.

As she drew near, her father told her, in his country language, that I was a slave of his friend Arnaute Mami, and came to pick a salad in his garden. She presently took the hint, and asked me in Lingua Franca, whether I was a gentleman, and if I was, why I did not ransom myself ? I told her I was already ransomed, and that by the price, she might guess the value my master set upon me, since he had bought me for 1500 pieces of eight. To which she replied, " If thou hadst been my father's slave, I would not have let him part with thee for twice as much ; for," said she, " you Christians never speak truth in any thing you say, and make yourselves poor to deceive the Moors."—" That may be, madam," said I, " but in truth I have dealt by my master, and do intend to deal by all those I shall have to deal with, sincerely and honourably."—" And when dost thou go home ?" said she.—" To-morrow, madam," said I, " for here is a French bark that sails to-morrow, and I intend not to lose that opportunity."—" Is it not better," replied Zoraida, " to stay till there come some Spanish bark, and go with them, and not with the French, who, I am told, are no friends of yours ?"—" No," said I ; " yet if the report of a Spanish bark's coming should prove true, I would perhaps stay for it, though it is more

likely I shall take the opportunity of the French, because the desire I have of being at home, and with those persons I love, will hardly let me wait for any otherconveniency."—"Without doubt," said Zoraida, " thou art married in Spain, and impatient to be with thy wife."—" I am not," said I, " married, but I have given my word to a lady, to be so as soon as I can reach my own country."—" And is the lady handsome that has your promise?" said Zoraida. " She is so handsome," said I, " that to describe her rightly, and tell truth, I can only say she is like you." At this her father laughed heartily, and said, " On my word, Christian, she must be very charming if she be like my daughter, who is the greatest beauty of all this kingdom : look upon her well, and thou wilt say I speak truth." Zoraida's father was our interpreter for the most of what we talked ; for though she understood the Lingua Franca; yet she was not used to speak it, and so explained herself more by signs than words.

While we were in this conversation, there came a Moor running hastily, and cried aloud that four Turks had leaped over the fence of the garden, and were gathering the fruit, though it was not ripe. The old man started at that, and so did Zoraida, for the Moors do naturally stand in awe of the Turks, particularly of the soldiers, who are so insolent on their side, that they treat the Moors as if they were their slaves. This made the father bid his daughter go in and shut herself up close, " whilst," said he, " I go and talk with these dogs ; and for thee, Christian, gather the herbs thou want'st, and go thy ways in peace, and

God conduct thee safe to thy own country." I bowed to him, and he left me with Zoraida, to go and find out the Turks : she made also as if she were going away, as her father had bid her ; but she was no sooner hid from his sight by the trees of the garden, but she turned towards me with her eyes full of tears, and said in her language, " Amexi Christiano, Amexi," which is, thou art going away, Christian, thou art going : to which I answered, " Yes, madam, I am, but by no means without you ; you may expect me next Friday, and be not surprised when you see us, for we will certainly go to the land of the Christians." I said this so passionately, that she understood me ; and throwing one of her arms about my neck, she began to walk softly, and with trembling, towards the house. It pleased fortune, that as we were in this posture walking together (which might have proved very unlucky to us) we met Agimorato coming back from the Turks, and we perceived he had seen us as we were ; but Zoraida, very readily and discreetly, was so far from taking away her arm from about my neck, that, drawing still nearer to me, she leaned her head upon my breast, and letting her knees give way, was in the posture of one that swoons ; I at the same time made as if I had much ado to bear her up against my will. Her father came hastily to us, and seeing his daughter in this condition, asked her what was the matter ? But she not answering readily, he presently said, without doubt these Turks have frightened her, and she faints away ; at which he took her in his arms. She, as it were, coming to herself,

fetched a deep sigh, and with her eyes not yet dried from tears, she said, "Amexi Christiano, Amexi, be gone, Christian, be gone." To which her father replied, "It is no matter, child, whether he go or no, he has done thee no hurt, and the Turks, at my request, are gone...." "It is they who frightened her," said I; "but since she desires I should be gone, I will come another time for my sallad, by your leave; for my master says the herbs of your garden are the best of any he can have."—"Thou may'st have what, and when thou wilt," said the father, "for my daughter does not think the Christians troublesome; she only wished the Turks away, and by mistake bid thee be gone too, or make haste and gather thy herbs." With this I immediately took leave of them both; and Zoraida, shewing great trouble in her looks, went away with her father. I in the meantime, upon pretence of gathering my herbs here and there, walked all over the garden, observing exactly all the places of coming in and going out, and every corner fit for my purpose, as well as what strength there was in the house, with all other conveniences to facilitate our business. Having done this, I went my ways, and gave an exact account of all that had happened to the renegade and the rest of my friends, longing earnestly for the time in which I might promise myself my dear Zoraida's company, without any fear of disturbance. At last the happy hour came, and we had all the good success we could promise ourselves, of a design so well laid; for the Friday after my discourse with Zoraida, towards the evening, we came to an anchor with our bark, almost

over-against the place where my lovely mistress lived; the Christians, who were to be employed at the oar, were already at the rendezvous, and hid up and down thereabouts. They were all in expectation of my coming, and very desirous to seize the bark which they saw before their eyes, for they did not know our agreement with the renegade, but thought they were by main force to gain their conveyance and their liberty, by killing the Moors on board. As soon as I and my friends appeared, all the rest came from their hiding-places to us. By this time the city-gates were shut, and no soul appeared in all the country near us. When we were all together, it was a question whether we should first fetch Zoraida, or make ourselves masters of those few Moors in the bark. As we were in this consultation, the renegade came to us, and asking what we meant to stand idle, told us his Moors were all gone to rest, and most of them asleep. We told him our difficulty, and he immediately said, that the most important thing was to secure the bark, which might easily be done, and without danger, and then we might go for Zoraida.

We were all of his mind, and so, without more ado, he marched at the head of us to the bark, and leaping into it, he first drew a scymitar, and cried aloud in the Moorish language, Let not a man of you stir, except he means it should cost him his life; and while he said this, all the other Christians were got on board. The Moors, who are naturally timorous, hearing the master use this language, were frightened, and without any resistance, suffered themselves to be manacled, which was done with great

expedition by the Christians, who told them at the same time, that if they made the least noise, they would immediately cut their throats. This being done, and half of our number left to guard them; the remainder, with the renegade, went to Agimorato's garden ; and our good fortune was such, that coming to force the gate, we found it open with as much facility as if it had not been shut at all. So we marched on with great silence to the house, without being perceived by any body. The lovely Zoraida, who was at the window, asked softly, upon hearing us tread, whether we were Nazarani, that is Christians ? I answered yes ; and desired her to come down. As soon as she heard my voice, she staid not a minute ; but, without saying a word, came down and opened the door, appearing to us all like a goddess, her beauty and the richness of her dress not being to be described. As soon as I saw her, I took her by the hand, which I kissed, the renegade did the same, and then my friends : the rest of the company followed the same ceremony ; so that we all paid her a kind of homage for our liberty. The renegade asked her in Morisco, whether her father was in the garden ? She said yes, and that he was asleep. Then said he, we must awake him, and take him with us, as also all that is valuable in the house. "No, no," said Zoraida, "my father must not be touched, and in the house there is nothing so rich as what I shall carry with me, which is enough to make you all rich and content." Having said this she stept into the house, bid us be quiet, and she would soon return. I asked

the renegade what had passed between them, and he told me what he had said ; to which I replied, that by no means any thing was to be done, otherwise than as Zoraida should please. She was already coming back with a small trunk so full of gold, that she could hardly carry it, when, to our great misfortune, while this was doing, her father awaked, and hearing a noise in the garden, opened a window and looked out : having perceived that there were Christians in it, he began to cry out in Arabic, " Thieves, Thieves ! Christians, Christians !"

These cries of his put us all into a terrible disorder and fear ; but the renegade seeing our danger, and how much it imported us to accomplish our enterprize before we were perceived, he ran up to the place where Agimorato was, and took with him some of our company ; for I durst by no means leave Zoraida, who had swooned away in my arms. Those who went up bestirred themselves so well, that they brought down Agimorato with his hands tied behind him, and his mouth stopped with a handkerchief, which hindered him from so much as speaking a word ; and threatening him besides, that if he made the least attempt to speak, it should cost him his life. When his daughter, who was come to herself, saw him, she covered her eyes to avoid the sight, and her father remained the more astonished, for he knew not how willingly she had put herself into our hands. Diligence on our side being the chief thing requisite, we used it so as we came to our bark, when our men began to be in pain for us, as fearing that we had met with some ill accident. We got on

board about two hours after it was dark ; where the first thing we did was to untie the hands of Zoraida's father, and to unstopp his mouth, but still with the same threatenings of the renegade, in case he made any noise. When he saw his daughter there, he began to sigh most passionately, and more when he saw me embrace her with tenderness, and that she, without any resistance or struggling, seemed to endure it ; he, for all this, was silent, for fear the threatenings of the renegade should be put in execution. Zoraida seeing us aboard, and that we were ready to handle our oars to be gone, she bid the renegade tell me, she desired I would set her father, and the other Moors, our prisoners, on shore ; for else she would throw herself into the sea, rather than see a father, who had used her so tenderly, be carried away captive for her sake, before her eyes. The renegade told me what she said, to which I agreed ; but the renegade was of another opinion ; saying, that if we set them on shore there, they would raise the country, and give the alarm to the city, by which some light frigates might be dispatched in quest of us, and getting between us and the sea, it would be impossible for us to make our escape ; and that all that could be done, was to set them at liberty in the first Christian land we could reach. This seemed so reasonable to us all, that Zoraida herself, being informed of the motives we had not to obey her at present, agreed to it. Immediately, with great silence and content, we began to ply our oars, recommending ourselves to providence with all our hearts, and endeavoured to make for Majorca,

which is the nearest Christian land ; but the north wind rising a little, and the sea with it, we could not hold that course, but were forced to drive along shore towards Oran, not without great fear of being discovered from Sargel, upon the coast, about thirty leagues from Algiers. We were likewise apprehensive of meeting some of those galliots which came from Tetuan with merchandize. Though, to say truth, we did not so much fear these last ; for except it were a cruizing galliot, we all of us wished to meet such a one, which we should certainly take, and so get a better vessel to transport us in. Zoraida all this while hid her face between my hands, that she might not see her father ; and I could hear her call upon Lela Marien to help us. By that time we had got about thirty miles the day broke, and we found ourselves within a mile of the shore, which appeared to us a desart solitary place, but yet we rowed hard to get off to sea, for fear of being discovered by somebody. When we were got about two leagues out to sea, we proposed the men should row by turns, that some might refresh themselves ; but the men at the oar said it was not time yet to rest, and that they could eat and row too, if those who did not row would assist them, and give them meat and drink ; this we did, and a little while after the wind blowing fresh, we ceased rowing, and set sail for Oran, not being able to hold any other course. We made above eight miles an hour, being in no fear of any thing but meeting some cruizers. We gave victuals to our Moorish prisoners, and the

renegade comforted them, and told them they were not slaves, but that they should be set at liberty upon the first opportunity. The same was said to Zoraida's father; who answered, "I might expect from your courtesy any thing else perhaps, O Christians; but that you should give me my liberty, I am not simple enough to believe it; for you never would have run the hazard of taking it from me, if you intended to restore it me so easily; especially since you know who I am, and what you may get for my ransom, which if you will but name, I do from this moment offer you all that you can desire for me and for that unfortunate daughter of mine, or for her alone; since she is the better part of me."

When he had said this, he burst out into tears so violently, that Zoraida could not forbear looking up at him, and indeed he moved compassion in us all, but in her particularly; insomuch, as starting from my arms, she flew to her father's; and putting her head to his, they began again so passionate and tender a scene, that most of us could not forbear accompanying their grief with our tears; but her father seeing her so richly dressed, and so many jewels about her, said to her, in his language, "What is the meaning of this, daughter? For last night, before this terrible misfortune befel us, thou wert in thy ordinary dress; and now, without scarce having had the time to put on such things, I see thee adorned with all the fineries that I could give thee; if we were at liberty and in full prosperity. This gives me more wonder and trouble than even our sad misfortune; therefore answer me." The rene-

gade interpreted all that the Moor said, and we saw that Zoraida answered not one word ; but on a sudden, spying the little casket in which she was used to put her jewels, which he thought had been left in Algiers, he remained yet more astonished, and asked her how that trunk could come into our hands, and what was in it ? to which the renegade, without expecting Zoraida's answer, replied, " Do not trouble thyself to ask thy daughter so many questions, for with one word I can satisfy them all. Know then that she is a Christian, and it is she that has filed off our chains, and given us liberty ; she is with us by her own consent, and I hope well pleased, as people should be who come from darkness into light, and from death to life."—" Is this true, daughter ?" said the Moor.—" It is," replied Zoraida.—" How then," said the old man, " art thou really a Christian ? and art thou she that has put thy father into the power of his enemies ?" — To which Zoraida replied, " I am she that is a Christian, but not she that has brought thee into this condition, for my design never was to injure my father, but only to do myself good."—" And what good hast thou done thyself ?" said the Moor.—" Ask that of Lela Marien," replied Zoraida, " for she can tell thee best." The old man had no sooner heard this but he threw himself, with incredible fury, into the sea, where without doubt he had been drowned, had not his garments, which were long and wide, kept him some time above water. Zoraida cried out to us to help him, which we all did so readily, that we pulled him out by his vest, but

half drowned, and without any sense. This so troubled Zoraida, that she threw herself upon her father, and began to lament and take on as if he had been really dead. We turned his head downwards, and by this means having disgorged a great deal of water, he recovered a little in about two hours time. The wind in the mean while was come about, and forced us toward the shore, so that we were obliged to ply our oars not to be driven upon the land. It was our good fortune to get into a small bay, which is made by a promontory, called the Cape of the Caba Rumia ; which, in our tongue, is the Cape of the wicked Christian woman ; and it is a tradition among the Moors, that Caba, the daughter of Count Julian, who was the cause of the loss of Spain, lies buried there ; and they think it ominous to be forced into that bay, for they never go in otherwise than by necessity ; but to us it was no unlucky harbour, but a safe retreat, considering how high the sea went by this time. We posted our centries on shore, but kept our oars ready to be plied upon occasion, taking in the mean time some refreshment of what the renegade had provided, praying heartily to God and the Virgin Mary, to protect us, and help us to bring our design to a happy conclusion. Here, at the desire of Zoraida, we resolved to set her father on shore, with all the other Moors, whom we kept fast bound ; for she had not courage, nor could her tender heart suffer any longer, to see her father and her countrymen ill used before her face ; but we did not think to do it before we were just ready to depart, and then they could not much hurt us, the place being a solitary one, and no habitations near

it. Our prayers were not in vain ; the wind fell and the sea became calm, inviting us thereby to pursue our intended voyage : we unbound our prisoners and set them on shore, one by one, which they were mightily astonished at.

When we came to put Zoraida's father on shore, who by this time was come to himself, he said, " Why do you think, Christians, that this wicked woman desires I should be set at liberty ? do you think it is for any pity she takes of me ? No certainly, but it is because she is not able to bear my presence, which hinders the prosecution of her ill desires : I would not have you think neither that she has embraced your religion, because she knows the difference between yours and ours, but because she has heard that she may live more loosely in your country than at home " And then turning himself to Zoraida, while I and another held him fast by the arms, that he might commit no extravagance, he said, " O infamous and blind young woman, where art thou going, in the power of these dogs, our natural enemies ? Cursed be the hour in which I begot thee, and the care and affection with which I bred thee." But I, seeing he was not like to make an end of his exclamations soon, made haste to set him on shore, from whence he continued to give us his curses and imprecations ; begging on his knees of Mahomet to beg of God Almighty to confound and destroy us ; and when being under sail, we could no longer hear him, we saw his actions, which were tearing his hair and beard, and rolling himself upon the ground ; but he once strained his voice so high, that we heard

what he said, which was, "Come back, my dear daughter, for I forgive thee all ; let those men have the treasure which is already in their possession, and do thou return to comfort thy disconsolate father, who must else lose his life in these sandy desarts!"

All this Zoraida heard, and shed abundance of tears, but could answer nothing, but beg that Lela Marien, who had made her a Christian, would comfort him.—"God knows," said she, "I could not avoid doing what I have done ; and that these Christians are not obliged to me, for I could not be at rest till I had done this, which to thee, dear father, seems so ill a thing." All this she said, when we were got so far out of his hearing, that we could scarce so much as see him. So I comforted Zoraida as well as I could, and we all minded our voyage. The wind was now so right for our purpose, that we made no doubt of being the next morning upon the Spanish shore ; but as it seldom happens that any felicity comes so pure as not to be tempered and allayed by some mixture of sorrow, either our ill fortune, or the Moor's curses, had such an effect, (for a father's curses are to be dreaded, let the father be what he will,) that about midnight, when we were under full sail, with our oars laid by, we saw by the light of the moon, hard by us, a round-sterned vessel with all her sails out, coming a-head of us, which she did so close to us, that we were forced to strike our sail not to run foul of her ; and the vessel likewise seemed to endeavour to let us go by. They had come so near us to ask from whence we came, and whither we were going ? But

doing it in French, the renegade forbid us to answer, saying without doubt, these are French pirates, to whom every thing is prize. This made us all be silent; and as we sailed on, they being under the wind, fired two guns at us, both, as it appeared, with chain-shot, for one brought our mast by the board, and the other went through us, without killing any body; but we, perceiving we were sinking, called to them to come and take us, for we were going to be drowned; they then struck their own sails, and putting out their boat, there came about a dozen French on board us, all well armed, and with their matches lighted. When they were close to us, seeing we were but few, they took us aboard their boat, saying that this had happened to us for not answering their questions. The renegade had time to take a little coffer or trunk, full of Zoraida's treasure; and heave it over board, without being perceived by any body.

When we were on board their vessel; after having learnt from us all they could, they began to strip us, as if we had been their mortal enemies: they plundered Zoraida of all the jewels and bracelets she had on her hands and feet; but that did not so much trouble me, as the apprehension I was in for the rich jewel of her chastity, which she valued above all the rest. But that sort of people seldom have any desires beyond the getting of riches, which they saw in abundance before their eyes; and their covetousness was so sharpened by it, that even our slaves clothes tempted them. They consulted what to do with us; and some were of opinion to throw

us over-board, wrapt up in a sail, because they intended to put into some of the Spanish ports, under the notion of being of Britany ; and if they carried us with them, they might be punished, and their roguery come to light : but the captain, who thought himself rich enough with Zoraida's plunder, said he would not touch at any port of Spain, but make his way through the Straits by night, and so return to Rochelle, from whence he came. This being resolved, they bethought themselves of giving us their long boat, and what provision we might want for our short passage. As soon as it was day, and that we descried the Spanish shore, at which sight, so desirable a thing is liberty, all our miseries vanished from our thoughts in a moment, they began to prepare things, and about noon they put us on board, giving us two barrels of water, and a small quantity of biscuit ; and the captain, touched with some remorse for the lovely Zoraida, gave her, at parting, about forty crowns in gold, and would not suffer his men to take from her those clothes which now she has on. We went aboard, shewing ourselves rather thankful than complaining. They got out to sea, making for the Straits, and we having the land before us for our north-star, plied our oars, so that about sun-set we were near enough to have landed before it was quite dark ; but considering the moon was hid in clouds, and the heavens were growing dark, and we ignorant of the shore, we did not think it safe to venture on it, though many among us were so desirous of liberty, and to be out of all danger, that they would have landed, though on a de-

sart rock ; and by that means, at least, we might avoid all little barks of the pirates of the Barbary coast, such as those of Tetuan, who come from home when it is dark, and by morning are early upon the Spanish coast ; where they often make a prize, and go home to bed the same day. But the other opinion prevailed, which was to row gently on, and if the sea and shore gave leave, to land quietly where we could. We did accordingly, and about midnight we came under a great hill, which had a sandy shore, convenient enough for our landing. Here we run our boat in as far as we could, and being got on land, we all kissed it for joy, and thanked God with tears for our deliverance. This done, we took out the little provision we had left, and climbed up the mountain, thinking ourselves more in safety there ; for we could hardly persuade ourselves, nor believe that the land we were upon was the Christian shore.

We thought the day long a-coming, and then we got to the top of the hill, to see if we could discover any habitations ; but we could nowhere descry either house, or person, or path. We resolved, however, to go farther on, as thinking we could not miss at last of somebody to inform us where we were : that which troubled me most was, to see my poor Zoraida go on foot among the sharp rocks, and I would sometimes have carried her on my shoulders ; but she was so much concerned at the pains I took, as she could be at what she endured ; so leaning on me she went on with much patience and content. When we were gone about a quarter of a league, we heard

the sound of a little pipe, which we took to be a certain sign of some flock near us; and looking well about, we perceived, at last, at the foot of a cork-tree a young shepherd, who was cutting a stick with his knife with great attention and seriousness. We called to him, and he having looked up, ran away as hard as he could. It seems, as we afterwards heard, the first he saw were the renegade and Zoraida, who being in the Moorish dress, he thought all the Moors in Barbary were upon him; and running into the wood, cried all the way as loud as he could, "Moors, Moors! arm, arm, the Moors are landed." We hearing this out-cry, did not well know what to do: but considering that the shepherd's roaring would raise the country, and the horse guard of the coast would be upon us, we agreed that the renegade should pull off his Turkish habit, and put on a slave's coat, which one of us lent him, though he that lent it him remained in his shirt. Thus recommending ourselves to God, we went on by the same way that the shepherd ran, still expecting when the horse would come upon us; and we were not deceived, for in less than two hours, as we came down the hills into a plain, we discovered about fifty horse coming upon a half-gallop towards us; when we saw that, we stood still, expecting them.

As soon as they came up, and, instead of so many Moors, saw so many poor Christian captives, they were astonished. One of them asked us if we were the occasion of the alarm that a young shepherd had given the country? Yes, said I, and upon that be-

gan to tell him who we were, and whence we came ; but one of our company knew the horseman that had asked us the question ; and without letting me go on, said, “ God be praised, gentlemen, for bringing us to so good a part of the country, for if I mistake not, we are near Velez Malaga ; and if the many years of my captivity have not taken my memory from me too, I think that you, sir, who ask us these questions, are my uncle Don Pedro Bustamente.” The Christian slave had hardly said this, but the gentleman lighting from his horse, came hastily to embrace the young slave, saying, “ Dear nephew, my joy, my life, I know thee, and have often lamented thy loss, and so has thy mother and thy other relations, whom thou wilt yet find alive. God has preserved them, that they may have the pleasure of seeing thee. We had heard thou wert in Algiers, and by what I see of thy dress, and that of all this company, you must all have had some miraculous deliverance.”—“ It is so,” replied the young man, “ and we shall have time enough now to tell all our adventures.” The rest of the horsemen hearing we were Christians escaped from slavery, lighted likewise from their horses, offering them to us to carry us to the city of Velez Malaga, which was about a league and a half off. Some of them went where we had left our boat, and got it into the port, while others took us up behind them ; and Zoraida rid behind the gentleman, uncle to our captive. All the people, who had already heard something of our adventure, came out to meet us ; they did not wonder to see captives at liberty, nor Moors

prisoners ; for in all that coast they are used to it ; but they were astonished at the beauty of Zoraida, which at that instant seemed to be in its point of perfection ; for, what with the agitation of travelling, and what with the joy of being safe in Christendom, without the terrible thought of being retaken, she had such a beautiful colour in her countenance, that were it not for fear of being too partial, I durst say, there was not a more beautiful creature in the world, at least that I had seen. We went straight to church, to thank God for his great mercy to us ; and as we came into it, and that Zoraida had looked upon the pictures, she said there were several faces there that were like Lela Marien's ; we told her they were her pictures, and the renegade explained to her as well as he could the story of them, that she might adore them, as if in reality each of them had been the true Lela Marien, who had spoke to her ; and she, who has a good and clear understanding, comprehended immediately all that was said about the pictures and images. After this, we were dispersed and lodged in different houses of the town ; but the young Christian slave of Velez carried me, Zoraida, and the renegade, to his father's house, where we were accommodated pretty well, according to their ability, and used with as much kindness as their own son. After six days stay at Velez, the renegade having informed himself of what was needful for him to know, went away to Granada, there to be re-admitted by the holy Inquisition into the bosom of the church. The other Christians, being at liberty, went each whither he thought fit. Zoraida and I

remained without other help than the forty crowns the pirate gave her, with which I bought the ass she rides on, and, since we landed, have been to her a father and a friend, but not a husband. We are now going to see whether my father be alive, or if either of my brothers has had better fortune than I ; though since it hath pleased heaven to give me Zoraida, and make me her companion, I reckon no better fortune could befall me. The patience with which she bears the inconvenience of poverty, the desire she shews of being made a Christian, do give me subject of continual admiration, and oblige me to serve and love her all the days of my life. I confess the expectation of being hers is not a little allayed with the uncertainties of knowing whether I shall find in my country any one to receive us, or a corner to pass my life with her ; and perhaps time will have so altered the affairs of our family, that I shall not find any body that will know me, if my father and brothers are dead.

This is, gentlemen, the sum of my adventures, which, whether or no they are entertaining, you are best judges. I wish I had told them more compendiously ; and yet, I assure you, the fear of being tedious has made me cut short many circumstances of my story.



---

## NOTES.

---



# NOTES

ON

## DON QUIXOTE.

VOL. II.

---

### Note I. p. 2.

*What occasion had you to take so hotly the part of Queen Magimasa?*—Madasima was the real name of this lady. Ozell, in his note at p. 3, considers *abad* (abbot) as a mere blunder of Sancho for *Elizabad*; but *Elizabad*, of whom something has been said already, seems to have been a priest as well as a doctor, for *Amadis* says to him, (Book I. c. 38,) “Azora os ruego Maestro que digays de Mañana missa.”

### Note II. p. 7.

*Amadis retiring from his disdainful Oriana to do penance on the poor rock.*—This is one of the most beautifully told of all the adventures of *Amadis*. It was on the suggestion of the old hermit that he assumed the name of *Beltenebros*: “Y *Amadis* le pedio que no le llamasse de su nombre mas per otro qual el le quisiesse poner. El hombre bueno dixo: Yo vos quiero poner un nombre que serà conforme à vuestra persona y angustia en que soyas puesto; y vuestra vida esta en grande amargura, y en *tenieblas*, quiero que ayays nombre *Beltenebros*. A *Amadis* plugo de aquel nombre.”—*Amad. de Gaula*, c. 48.

VOL. II.

T

The penitence of Don Quixote is one of the principal points of his imitation of Amadis—and the imitation is carried as close as is consistent with the general purpose of Cervantes. Amadis had just finished the conquest of the Firm Island—an enchanted region, seven leagues long by five broad, which was called *Insola*, or *Insula*, because it was almost surrounded by the sea, and *Firma Insula*, by reason of an isthmus connecting it with the main-land. From this he departed for the court of Sobradisa, the sovereignty of which country was then in the hands of the beautiful Queen Briolanja. The peerless Oriana being informed of this new expedition, conceived certain feelings of jealousy, and sent him, by her page Burin, a letter full of haughty complaints, forbidding him ever to appear again in her presence. The letter was superscribed, “I am the damsel wounded with the point of the sword through the heart, and thou art he that hast wounded me.” Amadis, on receiving and reading this communication, sunk forthwith into the profoundest melancholy; left all his adventures “cut off in the middle,” and withdrew to do penance in solitude. Having no farther occasion for the services of his Esquire Gandalin, he appointed him governor of the Firm Island,—as in due time Sancho himself becomes governor of Barataria. Amadis chose to consult Andalod, a certain hermit, who inhabited a dismal place, called the Poor Rock, in the midst of the sea, and, by his direction, he established there the seat of his miseries; assuming at the same time, for the reasons above-mentioned, the name of Beltenebros. Here Amadis devoted himself to a life of the most exemplary piety, hearing the matins and vespers of the ancient Andalod, confessing himself every noon, and spending all the rest of the four-and-twenty hours in tears and lamentations. Now and then, however, he composed poems on the rigour of Oriana; and accordingly we find, that Don Quixote also develops a vein both of music and poetry in the sequel, when he sings to the guitar a canzonet of his own composition, for the purpose of being overheard by Altesidora, the duchess’s maid. The deliverance of the Don from his afflictions on the Sierra Mo-

rena is also copied from that of Amadis ; in whose history the Damsell of Denmark plays a part, not unlike that which is devised for the fair Dorothea in this book of Don Quixote.—“ Pero Beltenebros se despido del hermitano hayendole saber que aquella donzella per la piedad de Dios alli per su salud era aportada.”—Amad. c. 52.

### Note III. p. 8.

*I will imitate Orlando Furioso's extravagance, when he ran mad, after finding the unhappy tokens of Angelica's commerce with Medoro at the fountain, &c.—The beautiful passage referred to occurs in the 23d canto of the Orlando Furioso, and it is from the adventure there narrated that the whole poem of Ariosto takes its title. Orlando has discovered love-knots and inscriptions carved upon the trees about the fountain, and is at last convinced, that they have been executed, not only by the hand of Medoro, but by that of Angelica herself. It is then that the poet comes to what he promises at the outset of his whole performance :—*

“ Diro d'Orlando,  
Cosa non detta in prosa mai ne in rima,  
Che per amor venne in furore, e matto  
D'uom che si saggio era stimato prima.”

### Cante 1, 2.

The concluding stanzas of the description are as follows :—

“ Tagliò lo scritto, e'l sasso, e innin'al Cielo  
A volo alzar fè le minute schegge.  
Infelice quell' antro, ed ogni stelo,  
In cui Medoro, e Angelica si legge ;  
Così restar quel dì, ch'ombra, nè gelo  
A pastor mai non daran più, nè a gregge.  
E quella fonte, già sì chiara, e pura,  
Da cotanta ira fu poco sicu

“ Che rami, e cappi, e tronchi, e sassi, e molle.  
 Non cessò di gittar nelle bell’ onde,  
 Fin che da sommo ad imo sì turbolle,  
 Che non furo mai più chiare, nè monde ;  
 E stanco alfine, e alfin di sudor molle,  
 Poi che la lena vinta non risponde  
 Allo sdegno, al grave odio, all’ ardente ira,  
 Cade sul prato, e verso il Ciel sospira.

“ Afflitto, e stanco alfin cade nell’ erba,  
 E fioca gli occhi al Cielo, e non fa motto.  
 Senza cibo, e dormir, così si serba,  
 Che'l Sole esce tre volte, e torna sotto.  
 Di crescer non cessò la pena acerba,  
 Che fuor del seano alfin l’ ebbe condotto.  
 Il quarto dì, da gran furor commosso,  
 E maglie, e piastre si stracciò di dosso.

“ Qui riman l’elmo, e là riman lo scudo,  
 Lontan gli arnesi, e più lontan l’ albergo.  
 L’ arme sue tutte in somma vi conclude,  
 Avean pel bosco differente albergo.  
 E poi si squarcia i panni, e monstrò ignudo  
 L’ isrido ventre, e tutto'l petto, e'l tergo ;  
 E cominciò la gran follia sì orrenda,  
 Che della più non sarà mai chi intenda.

“ In tanta rabbia, in tanto furor venne,  
 Che rimase offuscato in ogni senso.  
 Di tor la spada in man non gli sovvenne,  
 Che fatte avria mirabil cose, penso.  
 Ma nè quella, nè scure, nè bipenne  
 Era bisogno al suo vigore immenso.  
 Quivi fè ben delle sue prove eccelse,  
 Ch’ un’ alto pino al primo crollo svelse.

“ E svelse dopo il primo altri parecchi ;  
 Comme fosser finochi, ebuli, o aneti ;  
 E fè il simil di querca, e d’ olmi, vecchi,  
 Di faggi, e d’orni, e d’ ilicie, e d’ abeti.

Quel, ch' un uccellator, che s' apparechi  
 Il campo mondo, fa, per por le reti,  
 De' giunchi, e delle stoppie, e dell' urtiche,  
 Facea di cerri, e d' altre piante antiche."

## Note IV. p. 8.

*Roldan, or Orlando, or Rotolante.*—The last of these names was assumed by Orlando when he went incognito to the tournament of Cyprus.—*Espejo de Caballerías*, P. I. c. 76.

" Il nome e *Rotolante*, e quel ch' io posso  
 E a tuo commando, infia c' ho sangue adosso.  
 \* \* \* \* \*

Il giovonetto Re molto hebbe grato  
 Il cortese parlar che fece Orlando."

BOIARDO, B. II. c. 19.

## Note V. p. 9.

*Poor lovers, absent from the fair,*  
*All ill's not only dread but bear.*

" Mas en ausencia se siente  
 Con un estrano accidente,  
 Sen sombra de ningun bene  
 Zelos, muertes, y desden  
 Que esto, y mas, teme el ausente."

*Galatea*, L. 3.

## Note VI. p. 13.

*The Hyppogryphon of Astolpho.*—This is certainly the most daring of hyperboles.

" Quello Ippogrifo grande, e strano augello  
 Lo porta via con tal prestezza d' ale  
 Che lasceria di lungo tratto quello  
 Celer ministro del fulmineo strale;  
 Credo ch' à pena el tuono e la saetta  
 Venga in terra dal ciel con maggior fretta."

*Orlando.* Canto 6.

## Note VII. p. 18.

*The renowned Frontino.*—The] Don seems to have been thinking of Ruggiero's manumissory address to his famous steed when he made his speech to Rozinante.

————— “Frontin al tutto sciolto messe  
 Da se lontano e liberta li diede  
 O mio Frontin (li disse) se a me stesse  
 Di dare a merti tuoi degna mercede,  
 Avreste quel destrier da invidiar poco  
 Che volo al cielo e fra le stelle ha loco.  
 Cillaro, so, non fu, non fu Arione  
 Di te miglior ne merito piu lode.”

ARIOSTO. Canto 45.

Sancho's apostrophe also to his absent Dapple (“poor thing, he should not want a clap on the buttocks had he been here, nor a fine speech neither,”) is in obvious allusion to this passage.

Note VIII. p. 16.  
*Swift as a witch upon a broomstick.*

The Hag is astride,  
 This night for to ride,  
 The Devil and she together ;  
 Through thick, and through thin,  
 Now out, and then in,  
 Though ne'er so foul be the weather.

A thorn er a burr,  
 She takes for a spur :  
 With a lash of a bramble she rides now,  
 Through brakes and through briars,  
 O'er ditches and mires,  
 She follows the Spirit that guide now.

No beast, for his food,  
 Dares now range the wood ;  
 But huauht in his lair he lies lurking :  
 While mischiefs, by these,  
 On land and on seas,  
 At noon of night are a-working.

The storm will arise,  
 And trouble the skies,  
 This night ; and, more for the wonder,  
 The ghost from the tomb,  
 Affrighted shall come,  
 Call'd out by the clap of the thunder.

HERRICK.

## Note IX. p. 37.

*Should my master have no mind to be an emperor, and take a fancy to be an archbishop.*—The veracious Archbishop of Rheims on every occasion mentions himself as performing feats of valour quite equal to the noblest knights of the Round-Table ; and, in the Morgante Maggiore, *passim*, all justice is done to this part of his character. But the union of military and clerical functions was by no means at an end in the days of Cervantes himself, for, twenty years after his death, (1638) Don Lope de Hoyez, the Spanish admiral, was defeated in a great naval action, by the French fleet, under the orders of the Archbishop of Bourdeaux, who was then the favourite sea-officer of Louis XIII.—See Pellicer.

Guevarra, in treating of the revolt which Juan de Padilla, and others, excited in Castille, (anno 1520,) has occasion to detail at great length the exploits of another martial prelate, Don Antonio d'Acugna, Bishop of Zamora. At the age of 70, this pious gentleman displayed all the fire of a young commander—indeed Guevarra himself addressed a letter to him on the subject of his exertions. “To make soldiers priests,” quoth he, “ might be permitted ; but to turn priests into soldiers is scandalous : What then, my lord, shall we say of you, who have not only countenanced this scandal, but in your own person a hundred times exemplified it ? You brought three hundred priests of

Zamora to fight Tordesillas, and you led them yourself to the assault, at the very beginning of Lent, when you should have been conducting them to the altar. In the assault which your troops sustained from the governors of the kingdom, I saw with my own eyes one of your priests lying with his hackbut behind a hedge, from which situation he killed no less than eleven soldiers, making the sign of the cross over his gun-stock every time he fired. But, behold the end ! I saw this very man, before the day was over, receive a bullet in his brain, which constrained him to give up the ghost, without having time to say so much as a single *credo* for his own salvation. I have seen you yourself, my lord, standing in the trench at Ampudia, lifting up the soldiers as they fell from the ladder, and calling out to them like a common brigadier, ‘Courage, my boys ! courage ! up, up ! mount, mount ! fight bravely, and if you die, may my soul have the same portion with yours, for your cause is divine !’ Now, the men to whom you said so, my lord bishop, what were they but persons excommunicated by the Pope, traitors to their king, disturbers of the realm, sacrilegious, brigands, enemies of the commonwealth, sources of mutiny ?” &c. &c.—*GUEVARRA*, Lib. I. p. 170, 171.

#### Note X. p. 40.

*Such accoutrements had probably been in fashion in old King Bamba's days.*—When King Reccesuinth died in the year 692, his children were young, and the nobles immediately exercised their ancient right of electing to the vacant throne a person able to wield with vigour the iron sceptre of the Goths. Wamba, on whom their choice had fallen, after much persuasion, acceded to their proposal, and having been crowned at Toledo, for several years reigned with great prosperity. One Paulus, however, a near relation of the late king, at length succeeded in stirring up a formidable body of the nobles to rebellion, and these were not overthrown by Wamba, until after a long campaign had scattered confusion and destruction over the finest provinces of Spain. Paulus and his adherents, after being defeated in a conclusive battle, retreated to Toledo, of which royal city they had pos-

sesed themselves at the commencement of their insurrection. Here they were compelled to surrender themselves into the hands of Wamba, who immediately summoned a council of all his nobles to try the traitors. Such of them as were of noble blood were shaved, (the mark of degradation.) Paulus, and one or two of his chief supporters, were beheaded in presence of the army ; and all the rest were dismissed by the clemency of the king. The ill success of this insurrection did not however secure the tranquillity of Wamba's crown. Count Remigius, another member of the same royal house, made, after some space, another attempt of the same kind ; and, according to Mariana, he first had recourse to soliciting Moorish aid, and thereby paved the way for the ill-omened invitation of Count Julian. Remigius and his allies were defeated, but not, it would seem, so perfectly as Paulus had been, for he was not only suffered to retain his possessions, but to frequent the court of Wamba ; whom, despairing of open warfare, he, after a few months had elapsed, attempted to carry off by poison. Wamba sickened, and supposing himself to be on the point of death, determined to prevent needless effusion of blood by abdicating the throne, and formally resigning it to Remigius. The nobles were accordingly assembled around his couch, where Remigius was invested with the royal insignia, and immediately after Wamba assumed the cowl—an expedient to which many of the warriors and rude livers of those days had recourse when they conceived themselves to be in extremity. Next day his illness greatly subsided, but he disdained to attempt undoing what he had done, or despaired of being able to make such an attempt with success, and retired to a monastery among the hills, where he led a life of piety and mortification for seven years. He died in the odour of sanctity, and his bones were long afterwards removed to the cathedral of Toledo by the care of Alphonso, surnamed the Wise.—See MARIANA, L. VI. c. 12, 13, 14, 15.

#### Note XI. p. 50.

*Perfidious Galalon ! faithless Vellido ! malicious Julian !—*  
Of Galalon, the traitor of Roncesvalles, I have already spoken.

The name of Vellido had passed into a bye-word among the Spaniards on account of a better authenticated atrocity—his murder of Don Sancho, the King of Castille. According to Mariana, King Sancho's father had divided the royal inheritance, but the eldest of the princes soon overcame in war his two brothers, and deprived them of the territories which had been bequeathed to them. His sister URACCA had obtained possession of Zamora and the adjoining country, and it was she who next engaged his attention. He laid siege to her city (in 1068,) and must have succeeded in taking it had not one Vellido Astolfo, a partisan of Uracca, found means to slay him on the eve of his expected triumph. This man left the town, entered the king's camp, told a long story of the ill treatment he had received from Uracca, and offered to give the king information of a secret passage, by which he might easily enter Zamora during the night. As Mariana tells the story, he rode out alone with the king, and dispatched him with his javelin, in a solitary part of the forest which lay contiguous to the city. But the following very ancient ballad represents the murder as having taken place within the camp of Sancho.

*Guarte, Guarte, Rey Don Sancho, &c.*

THE DEATH OF KING SANCHO.

"Beware, beware, King Sancho, for treason is begun,  
 A traitor base of traitorous race, the crafty Dolfos' son,  
 He has come forth from Zamora, and evil is his eye,  
 And if he comes unto the king, be sure my king shall die."  
 There is crying in the camp, there is crying on the green—  
 "The king is dead, the king is dead, the traitor who hath seen?"—  
 "You need not ask, you need not ask, for Vellido I saw,  
 With his poniard, with his poniard,—he came from Zamora."  
 There was crying in the camp, there was crying on the green,  
 But the loudest cries they did arise from Zamora at e'en;  
 From the streets and from the halls sounded trumpet and guitar,  
 And Uracca in her garden, in her garden-bower afar,  
 The red wine pour'd to Vellido, by the light of the evening-star.

The story of Count Julian has been so effectually immortalized in English by Mr Southey's Roderick, that I need not trouble the reader with any notice of it in this place. I shall translate, however, what appears to be the most ancient of all the Spanish ballads upon the Moorish Conquest of Spain.

*En Ceupta esta Julian, &c.*

COUNT JULIAN.

Count Julian stands in Ceupta, in Ceupta by the shore,  
 For he will send a message, a message to the Moor ;  
 For he will send a letter, and he must find a Moor  
 To write it in the Arab tongue, upon the Christian shore :  
 He has found an old man walking on the sand beside the sea,  
 An ancient man, with a white beard, an old old Moor was he ;  
 And he hath written the letter, and the same hath Julian seal'd,  
 But cruel Julian dreaded the thing might be reveal'd,  
 And when the Moor had finish'd it, he took him by the throat,  
 Without remorse he strangled him, and buried him in that spot.  
 It was a woeful letter, that day the old Moor wrote !

\* \* \* \* \*

It was a woeful letter, for it bade the Moor king come,  
 And take to him the fairest realm was ever in Christendom.  
 O woe to thee ! O woe to thee ! thou famous Spanish land,  
 Soon on thy shore the cruel Moor, with all his host shall stand,  
 And all thy riches they shall be in the misbeliever's hand.  
 O Spain ! thou glorious region, among thy rivers' sand,  
 The mighty store of silver, of silver fair and pale,  
 And of the red gold, from days of old, was never known to fail.  
 But soon shall now be casten thy pride away from thee,  
 Soon thou shalt bow thee in the dust beneath Moorish mastery.  
 Thy cities fair beyond compare, on plain and rocky shore,  
 They all shall be the heritage of the misbelieving Moor.—  
 Our soil it is enslaved, for our sins against God and Man,  
 And all by the black treason of accursed Julian.

\* \* \* \* \*

With a heavy heart Rodrigo rear'd the banner broad of Spain,  
 To give the false Moors battle as they muster'd on the plain ;

Like a true king he battled, albeit his heart was sore,  
 But the curse of God was mighty, and the day was to the Moor.  
 From that day forth Rodrigo was never seen again ;  
 They found Orelío riderless, roaming on the plain.—  
 Now, a curse on thee, Don Orpaz, thou false Bishop of Spain !  
 A curse on the black counsel thou gavest to the king !  
 O woe, beyond all measure, that I such a song should sing !  
 O woe, beyond all measure, that by two traitors' guile,  
 And for a single damsel, and her accursed smile,  
 God should have sent this sorrow upon the land of Spain !—  
 —God, look upon our misery, and be our God again !

## Note XI. p. 56.

*But nothing equalled the lustre of her beauty.*—The translation is imperfect here, for the original has “la bellezza singular de sus hermosos y rubios cabellos,” literally, as old Shelton renders it, “the singular beauty of her fair and golden tresses.” It is worthy of remark, that among almost all dark nations, the poetical style of loveliness is *blonde*. It was so among the ancient Romans, and it is still so among the Spaniards; indeed, I have often heard British officers, who served during the late Peninsular war, expatiate upon the extraordinary admiration which the Spanish ladies bestowed upon such of their comrades as had that sort of fierce red hair, which is commonly reckoned the reverse of lovely in this country. In Cervantes’ time the ladies, and even the gentlemen of the Spanish court, were accustomed to medicate their hair, in order to give it the appearance of this “rubia bellezza.”

## Note XII. p. 68.

*I was born in a town of Andalusia, from which a duke takes his title, that makes him grande of Spain.*—The high nobility of Spain is divided into two classes. The first consists of those who are styled grandees—the second, of those who have the title of count or marquess in Castille or Arragon, without being grandees. It is supposed that the grandees are, properly, the descendant of these *Ricos-Hombres*, who reci-

ved in the old time from the king, what was called *Merced de pendon y calderu*; i. e. *the right of banner and cauldron*, or of commanding and entertaining their own vassalage. These persons had the right of being covered in the royal presence, and sat nearest the throne in the Cortes. By degrees, all those whose lands had been erected into duchies, marquisates, or counties, assumed the title of grandee, which the cadets of their families also bore, although without any territorial title. But the German and Flemish courtiers, who came into Spain with Charles V., prevailed on him to restrict more accurately the quality of grandee; and he accordingly issued an edict at the commencement of his reign, by which all were ordered to lay down that title, with the exception of sixteen noblemen, of whom twelve were dukes, two marquesses, and two counts, in Castille and Arragon. In the families of most of these nobles, the title of grandee still remains, being capable of transmission in the female line. But in the case of those whom Charles himself, and his successors, have since elevated to the rank of grandee, the title is, almost without exception, limited to the male heirs. The old grandes, or those whose ancestors were recognized as such by Charles V., have several distinctions over and above those which they share with the others; for example, the king addresses them as his *Primos* (cousins-germain,) while the rest are styled his *Parentes* (remoter kinsmen.) The most ancient grandes of Spain, are the descendants of the Dukes of Medina-Sidonia, Albuquerque, Alva, Escalonna, l'Infantado, Nagera, Bejar, d'Arcos, Segovia, and Montalto; the Marquesses of Astorga and Aguilar, and the Counts of Lemos and Benevente—these being the families whose *grandezza* was acknowledged by the reforming edict of Charles V. in 1520. The title of Don was, by an edict of Philip II. in 1586, (renewed, with mention of severe penalties, in 1596,) declared to be unlawfully borne, unless by those who could prove four descents of pure nobility; but how ill this law was at all times obeyed, we may gather from many passages in Cervantes himself.

## Note XIII. p. 89.

*Pedro de Alcala.*—A person of this name wrote a book, entitled “Arte para ligeramente saber la lingua Arabiga,” which was published at Salamanca.

## Note XIV. p. 90.

*Thrice valorous knight, never will I rise from this place till you have granted me a boon.*—“La Jayana se lanzo a los pies de Amadis: Agora vos suplico, Señor, que me otorguez un don que, para que yo sea enmendada de un tuerto que recibí, conviene que me lo otorgues. Yo lo otorgo dixo el Rey.” *Amadis de Grecia*, P. 1. C. 39.—[The gift here demanded, by the way, was, as in the case of the Princess Micomicona, “the head of a certain usurping giant.”]

“*Io non mi levero dei questi piedi*  
 (Diss’ ella) Signor mio, se del fellone  
 Ch’ uccise il mio fratel non mi concedi  
 Di vendicare.”

ARIOSTO, *Canto 45, 16.*

## Note XV. p. 92.

*She strove to kiss his hand, but the most courteous of all knights would not permit it.*

“*La Donzella de lagrime copperse*  
*Gli occhi, et la vaga guancia colorita,*  
*Vuol baciargli la man; ma no'l soffrse*  
*Il Brun Cortese.*”

GYRONE, L. 7. 95.

## Note XVI. p. 92.

*Sancho fetched his arms from a tree, where they hung like trophies.*

“*La su spada e l’altri arme,*  
*Vidi un cavalier cortese e pio*  
*Che le ando raccogliendo da ogni parte.*

*E poi de tutte quelle un' Arboscello  
Fe, a guisa di Trofeo, pomposo e bello."*

ARIOSTO, *Canto 31.*

Note XVII. p. 95.

*Pegasus, or the Zebra, or the fleet mare of the famous Moor Muzaraque, who, to this hour, lies enchanted in the dreary cavern of Zulema, &c.—See Primaleon, Book III. Chap. 56.*

Note XVIII. p. 95.

*The great Compluto.*—This is Complutum, the old Latin name of Alcala de Henares, (and therefore used in preference by Don Quixote.) “This city was famous in those days for its university, (the second in rank after Salamanca,) the magnificent foundation of Cardinal Ximenes, whose extraordinary epitaph, still visible in the choir of its chapel, records, that “ he added the purple to the frock, the helmet to the hood, and the diadem to the tonsure.” Alcala has since owed not a little of its celebrity to the circumstance of its being the birth-place of Cervantes himself, whose statue in marble adorns its market-place, as that of Erasmus does a similar situation in his native city of Rotterdam.

Note XIX. p. 101.

*I would sooner have twitched off one of my mustachios.*—Philip II., by an edict of 1597, commanded “ that all councillors of all the royal councils should wear the beard long, untouched, so as to cover the whole chin.” By the same edict, military and clerical personages were commanded to shave all but the mustachios. The most common of all Spanish oaths was, “ *by my mustachio;*” but Dom Joam de Castro, Viceroy in India for King John III. of Portugal, did more than swear by his mustachios; he *pledged* them. When he wished to raise money among the citizens of Goa, for his expedition to raise the siege of Diu, he cut off one of his mustachios, and left it, by way of hostage, in the town-house. Such security could not be questioned. He received the sum

he asked for, and honourably relieved his whisker on his return. *Vigote*, which is the word used in the text for mustachio, is said, by the Spanish lexicographers, to be no other than our own Gothic, *By God*—in old German, *Bey Gott*—applied, of course, to the mustachio, from the universal custom of swearing by it.

Note XX. p. 104.

*He should have a mole of hair on his right shoulder.*—In the old “ Chronicle of King Roderick, and the Loss of Spain,” written by Miguel de Luna, (and pretended to be translated from the Arabic of one Abulcaen,) among other wonderful stories, it is related, that “ when the Moor Tarif was at Tarifa with Count Julian, an old Spanish woman was brought into their presence, who said, that when she was a child, she remembered her father saying there was an old prophecy that Spain must pass into the hands of the Moors, and that the captain who should overcome Spain, must be a strong and valorous man, and that, by the same mark, he must have on his right shoulder a hairy mole, as big as a bean. On hearing the which, Tarif forthwith stripped himself, and made manifest in the eyes of all the same great mole of which the old woman had spoken.” There is no doubt Cervantes alludes to this story in the text.

Note XXI. p. 113.

*He had clothed himself like a gypsey.*—It is to be wished that this picturesque race, who maintained, and still maintain in the Peninsula, the same sort of manners and habits with which we are familiar, had attracted more of Cervantes’ observation than they seem to have done. He has, however, left a pretty novel, under the name of *La Gitana*, where their fortune-telling tricks are made the vehicle of much amusement. The “ quicksilver in the ears of the ass,” a few pages on, seems to have been a common trick among the Spanish gypsies. Thus, “ Los Gitanos son grandes trucaburras y en su poder parecen las bestias unas Zebras, y en llevandoles el que los com-

pia, son mas lerdas que tortugas."—Cov. And in Cervantes novel of the *Frengona*, "Aunque el Asturiano hallo muchos asnos, ninguno le satisfezo, puesto que un Gitano anduvo muy solicitó por encaxalle uno, que mas caminaba por el azotue que le habia echado en sus oídos, que por legireza suya."

Note XXII. p. 125.

*He had changed his clothes.*—The reader will not be displeased with seeing some picturesque notices of the costume of Spain, France, and Italy, which occur in the old English novel of "The Unfortunate Traveller, or Life of Jack Wilton," published in 1594, by the celebrated Thomas Nashe.

"What is there in France to be learned more than in England, but falsehood in friendship, perfect slovenry, and to love no man but for my pleasure? I have known some that have continued there by the space of half a dozen years, and when they came home, they have hid a little weery lean face under a broad French hat, kept a terrible coil with the dust in the street in their long cleaks of grey paper, and spoken English strangely. Nought else have they profited by their travel, but to distinguish the true Bourdeaux grape, and know a cup of neat Gascoigne wine from wine of Orleans; yea, and peradventure this also, to esteem of the p—x as a pimple, to wear a velvet patch on their face, and walk melancholy with their arms folded.

"From Spain what bringeth our traveller? A skull-crowned hat of the fashion of an old deep porringer; a diminutive alderman's ruff with short strings, like the droppings of a man's nose; a close-bellied doublet coming down with a peake behind, as far as the crupper, and cut off before by the breast-bone, like a partlet or neckercher; a wide pair of gascoynes, which, ungathered, would make a couple of women's riding-kirtles; huge hangers, that have half a cow-hide in them; a rapier that is lineally descended from half-a-dozen dukes at the least; let his cloak be as long or as short as you will; if long, it is faced with Turkey grogeran ravelled; if short, it hath a cape like a calf's tongue, and is not so deep in his

whole length, nor so much cloth in it, I will justify, as only the standing cape of a Dutchman's cloak. I have not yet touched all, for he hath in either shoe as much taffaty for his tyings, as would serve for an ancient ; which serveth him (if you would have the mystery of it) of the own accord for a shoe-rag. If you talk with him, he makes a dish-cloth of his own country, in comparison of Spain ; but if you urge him particularly wherein it exceeds, he can give no instance, but in Spain they have better bread than any we have ; when (poor hungry slaves !) they may crumble it into water well enough, and make misons with it, for they have not a good morsel of meat, except it be salt pilchers, to eat with it, all the year long ; and, which is more, they are poor beggars, and lie in foul straw every night.

"Italy, the paradise of the earth, and the epicure's heaven, how doth it form our young master ? It makes him to kiss his hand like an ape, cringe his neck like a starveling, and play at *Hey-pass-repass-come-aloft*, when he salutes a man ; from thence he brings the art of atheism, the art of epicurizing, the art of whoring, the art of poisoning, the art of sodomy ; the only probable good thing they have to keep us from utterly condemning it, is, that it maketh a man an excellent courtier, a curious carpet knight ; which is, by interpretation, a fine close letcher, a glorious hypocrite ; it is now a privy note amongst the better sort of men, when they would set a singular mark or brand on a notorious villain, to say he hath been in Italy."

#### Note XXIII. p. 133.

*Cirongillio of Thrace, and Felixmarte of Hircania*.—The adventures of Cirongillio were celebrated in a folio, by Bernardo de Vargas. I have already spoken of the other ; but I should have mentioned, when doing so, an anecdote of Dr Samuel Johnson, told by Boswell, on the authority of Bishop Percy. "The bishop said, the doctor, when a boy, was immoderately fond of romances of chivalry, and he had retained his fondness for them through life ; so that, spending part of a summer at my parsonage-house in the country, he chose for

his regular reading the old Spanish romance of *Felixmarte of Hyrcania*, in folio, which he read quite through." *Boswell*, Vol. I. p. 25.—The innkeeper, therefore, may be excused, in spite of the curate's sarcasms.

**Note XXIV. p. 133.**

*Gonsalvo Hernandez de Cordova, and Diego Garcia de Paredes.*—The rare folio referred to is entitled, "Chronica del gran Capitan Gonsalvo Hernandez de Cordova y Aguilars, con la vida del famoso D. Diego Garcia de Paredes. En Sevilla, 1582." The account it contains of the life of the great captain, is exceedingly graphic and minute; and the modest memoir of Garcia de Paredes, at the end of the volume, is peculiarly interesting, by reason of its having been written by the distinguished soldier himself, of whose actions it treats. Gonsalvo de Cordova, illustrious even in his early youth for his services in the last war of Grenada, owed his title of—The Great Captain, to his successful conduct of the war in Naples, from which he twice drove the French forces, commanded by the most eminent generals of the age. Brantome pretends that the success of Gonsalvo was less owing to any extraordinary genius of his own, than to the dissensions which prevailed among the French leaders opposed to him;—however this might have been, the fact is certain, that Gonsalvo's reputation stood so high, that King Ferdinand, his sovereign, was exceedingly jealous of him. The king having come to Naples, was much piqued on discovering that the name of the Great Captain was an object of much greater respect there than his own; he deprived him of his command, under pretext of desire to have him nearer his person, and they embarked in the same vessel for Spain. At the interview which took place at Savona between Ferdinand and Lewis XII., Gonsalvo was present. The French monarch received the Great Captain with all the respect imaginable, but could with difficulty prevail on Ferdinand to permit of his being seated and covered in the royal presence. In return, the King of Spain was lavish of attentions to the Chevalier Bayard and Louis D'Ars, and addressed Louis XII. in these words: "My brother, these are two

brave and faithful servants. He who has such cavaliers with him, should take especial care of them." One might have replied, that he himself had no need of any such suggestion in regard to Gonsalvo de Cordova, for he scarcely ever permitted his own brave and faithful servant to be a moment out of his sight. He carried him with him to Spain, where the Great Captain lingered out the remainder of his life in such a state of obscurity and inaction, that he was accustomed to speak of himself as an "Exile." He founded, towards the close of his life, a superb monastery in the district of the city of Grenada, called *Antequerela*, and was buried in its church. His epitaph, which still remains there, is simple and grand :

**GONSALVUS FERDINANDUS A CORDUBA,  
DUX MAGNUS HISPANIARUM,  
GALLORUM ET TURCORUM TERROR.**

It was from the exploits of his mature manhood that Gonsalvo de Cordova acquired his high place in European history, and his title of the Great Captain ; but the romantic incidents of his youthful campaigns against the Moors of Grenada fill, without doubt, the most interesting pages of his Chronicle, and have furnished one of the best of the French novelists (Florian) with the groundwork of one of the most agreeable of his narratives. It was Gonsalvo that arranged the terms of the treaty by which the Moorish Sovereign of Grenada at last abdicated his Spanish throne ; and the Chronicle contains the story of the unfortunate prince's flight, agreeing in almost every particular with the ancient ballad on the same subject, of which I shall insert my translation.

#### THE FLIGHT FROM GRANADA.

THERE was crying in Granada when the sun was going down,  
Some calling on the Trinity, some calling on Mahoun ;  
Here pass'd away the Koran, there in the Cross was borne,  
And here was heard the Christian bell, and there the Moorish horn ;  
Te Deum Laudamus was up the Alcala sung ;  
Down from th' Alhamra's minarets were all the crescents flung ;

The arms thereon of Arragon and Castille they display ;  
 One king comes in in triumph, one weeping goes away.  
 Thus cried the weeper, while his hands his own white beard did tear,  
 " Farewell, farewell, Grenada ! thou city without peer ;  
 Woe, woe, thou pride of Heathendom, seven hundred years and  
 more  
 Have gone since first the faithful thy royal sceptre bore.  
 Thou wert the happy mother of an high renowned race ;  
 Within thee dwelt a noble line that now go from their place ;  
 Within thee fearless knights did dwell, who fought with meikle glee  
 The enemies of proud Castille, the bane of Christientée.  
 The mother of fair dames wert thou, of truth and beauty rare,  
 Into whose arms did noble knights for solace sweet repair ;—  
 For whose dear sakes the gallants of Afric made display  
 Of might in joust and battle on many a bloody day :  
 Here gallants held it little thing for ladies' sake to die,  
 Or for the Prophet's honour, and pride of Soldanry.  
 In thee did valour flourish, and deeds of warlike might  
 Ennobled lordly palaces, in which we had delight.  
 The gardens of thy Vega, its fields and blooming bowers.—  
 Woe, woe ! I see their beauty gone, and scatter'd all their flowers.—  
 No reverence can he claim the king that such a land hath lost,  
 On charger never can he ride, nor be heard among the host—  
 But in some dark and dismal place, where none his face may see,  
 There, weeping and lamenting, alone that king should be."—  
 Thus spake Granada's king as he was riding to the sea,  
 About to cross Gibraltar's strait away to Barbary :—  
 Thus he in heaviness of soul unto his queen did cry.—  
 (He had stopp'd and ta'en her in his arms, for together did they fly.)  
 " Unhappy king ! whose craven soul can brook" (did she reply,)  
 " To leave behind Grenada, and hast not heart to die ;  
 Now for the love I bore thy youth thee gladly could I slay,  
 For what is life to leave when such a crown is cast away !"

The particular feat of Diego Garcia De Paredes, referred to a little lower by the innkeeper, is thus narrated in the chronicle of the Great Captain. " Diego Garcia de Paredes tomó una espada de dos manos en el hombro y se metió por la puente de Garallano que los Franceses habían echado poco antes. Y con la espada de dos manos se metió entre ellos, y peleando como un

bravo Leon empezó de hazer tales pruebas de su persona que nunca las hicieron mayores en sus tiempos, Hector, ni Julio Cæsar, ni Alejandro Magno—pareciendo otro Horatio, en su denueda y animosidad.” *Chronica*, cap. 106.—For authentic particulars of De Paredes, see *Mariana*, Book 27. chapter 15. His life, as Cervantes justly observes, is written with great modesty—greater justice being done to the achievements of his friends than to his own.

Note XXVI. p. 148.

*Ludovico Tansillo's tears of St Peter.*—This was a pious work, written by the Neapolitan poet in his old age, by way of atonement for the more celebrated, and extremely licentious production of his younger years, entitled, “*Il Vendemiatore*,”

Note XXVII. p. 149.

*That experiment from which the prudent Reynaldus excused himself.*—It seems certain, that Cervantes took his first idea of the exquisite novel of the Impertinent Curiosity, from that adventure in Ariosto, to which he here alludes. The properties of the “brittle vessel,” to which the experiment referred, are thus explained by the host, at the end of the 42d Canto of the Orlando.

“ Se bei con questo, vedrai grande effetto ;  
 Chè, se porti il cimier di Cornuaglia,  
 Il vin te spargerai tutto sul petto,  
 Nè goccia sarà che in bocca saglia.  
 Ma s'hai moglie fedel, tu berrai netto ;  
 Or di veder tua sorte ti travaglia.  
 —Così dicendo, per mirar tien gli occhi,  
 Che in seno il vin Rinaldo si trabocchi.”

But Rinaldo was of the prudent opinion, that the experiment might produce evil, could certainly produce no good; and he therefore avoided gratifying his host according to his suggestion. It was on witnessing this wise forbearance of Rinaldo, that the host burst into the tears of which men-

tion is made in the text, and proceeded to tell the melancholy story of his own impertinent curioosity ;—which, without doubt, is very much the same sort of story with that of Anselmo and Lothario. See Canto 48d of the *Orlando Furioso*, throughout.

Note XXXVIII. p. 159.

*"At dead of night, when every troubled breast," &c.—This sonnet occurs again in the second act of Cervantes' comedy, "La casa de los Zelos."*

Note XXIX. p. 172.

*The four S's required in every good lover.*

*Sabio, Solo, Solicito, Segreto.*

*Sabio en servir, y nunca descuidado,  
Solo en amar, y a otra alma no sugeto,  
Solicito en buscar sus desengaños,  
Segreto en sus fabores y en sus danos.*

BARRAHONA, C. 4. 14.

Note XXX. p. 191.

*I will be cut like a cucumber, but this Don Quixote, or Don Devil, has been hacking my wine-skins.*—The hint of this adventure seems evidently to be taken from one of the best stories in the *Golden Ass* of Apuleius, which I shall quote from Mr Dunlop's abstract.

“One night, while supping at the house of Byrrhena, Apuleius was informed that the following day being the festival of Momus, he ought to honour that divinity by some merry invention.

“Returning home somewhat intoxicated, he perceived through the dusk three large figures attacking the door of Milo with much fury. Suspecting them to be robbers, who intended to break in, he ran his sword through them in succession, and, leaving them as dead, escaped into the house. Next morning he is arrested on account of the triple homicide, and is brought to trial in a crowded and open court.

The accuser is called by a herald. An old man, who acted in this capacity, pronounced an harangue, of which the duration was limited by a clepsydra, as the old sermons were measured by hour glasses. Two women in deep mourning were introduced; one lamented the death of her husband, the other of her son, and both called loudly for vengeance on the murderer. Apuleius was found guilty of the death of three citizens; but previous to his execution it was resolved he should be put to the torture, to force a discovery of his accomplices, and the necessary preparations were accordingly completed. What had chiefly astonished Apuleius during this scene, was, that the whole court, and among others, his host Milo, were all the while convulsed with laughter. One of the women in mourning now demanded that the dead bodies, which were in court, should be uncovered, in order that, the compassion of the judges being excited, the tortures might be increased. The demand was complied with, and the task assigned to Apuleius himself. The risibility of the audience is now accounted for, as he sees, to his utter astonishment, three immense leather bottles, which, on the preceding night, he had mistaken for robbers. The imaginary criminal is then dismissed, after being informed that this mock trial was in honour of the god Momus.

" On returning home the matter was more fully explained by Fotis, who informs Apuleius that she had been employed by her mistress to procure the heir of a young Boeotian, of whom she was enamoured, in order to prepare a charm which would bring him to her house: that having failed in obtaining this ingredient, and fearing the resentment of her mistress, she had brought her some goat's hair, which fell from the scissars of a bottle-shearer. These hairs being burned by the sorceress, with the usual incantations, had (instead of leading the Boeotian to her house,) given animation to the skins to which they formerly adhered, and which being then in the form of bottles, appeared, in their desire of entrance, to assault the door of Milo."

Cervantes, in many parts of his work, shews himself to have been an attentive reader of this old Latin romance; but

Le Sage (that boldest of borrowers,) owes to it by far the most picturesque and splendid passage of his Gil Blas, viz. the whole description of the habitation of the robbers—the revelry of these banditti—the old woman that attends on them—the arrival of the new troop during the entertainment—the captivity and escape of the young lady, &c. &c.

Note XXXI. p. 193.

*“Here are the bulls!”*—It is not to be doubted, that the Spaniards derived their passion for the bull-fights from the Moors. Indeed, in most of their old ballads, descriptive of bull-fights, the personages are Moorish, as in the following specimen :—

THE BULLFIGHT OF GANZUL.

I.

KING ALMANZOR of Grenada, he hath bid the trumpet sound,  
He hath summon'd all the Moorish lords, from the hills and plains  
around ;  
From Vega and Sierra, from Betis and Xenil,  
They have come with helm and cuirass of gold and twisted steel.

II.

'Tis the holy Baptist's feast they hold in royalty and state,\*  
And they have closed the spacious lists beside the Alhamra's gate ;  
In gowns of black with silver laced within the tented ring,  
Eight Moors to fight the bull are placed in presence of the king.

III.

Eight Moorish lords of valour tried, with stalwart arm and true,  
The onset of the beasts abide come trooping furious through ;  
The deeds they've done, the spoils they've won, fill all with hope  
and trust,  
Yet, ere high in heaven appears the sun, they all have bit the dust.

\* The day of the Baptist is a festival among the Mussulmans as well as among Christians.

## IV.

Then sounds the trumpet clearly, then clangs the loud tambour,  
Make room, make room for Ganzul ;—throw wide, throw wide the  
door ;—

Blow, blow the trumpet clearer still, more loudly strike the drum,  
The Alcayd<sup>e</sup> of Agalva to fight the bull doth come.

## V.

And first before the king he pass'd, with reverence stooping low,  
And next he bow'd him to the queen, and the Infantas all a-rowe ;  
Then to his lady's grace he turn'd, and she to him did throw  
A scarf from out her balcony was whiter than the snow.

## VI.

With the life-blood of the slaughter'd lords all slippery is the sand,  
Yet proudly in the centre hath Ganzul ta'en his stand ;  
And ladies look with heaving breast, and lords with anxious eye,  
But the lance is firmly in its rest, and his look is calm and high.

## VII.

Three bulls against the knight are loosed, and two come roaring on,  
He rises high in stirrup, forth stretching his rejon ;  
Each furious beast upon the breast he deals him such a blow,  
He blindly totters and gives back across the sand to go.

## VIII.

“ Turn, Ganzul, turn,” the people cry—“ the third comes up behind,  
Low to the sand his head holds he, his nostrils snuff the wind ;”—  
The mountaineers that lead the steers without stand whispering low,  
“ Now thinks this proud Alcayd<sup>e</sup> to stun Harpado so ?”

## IX.

From Guadiana comes he not, he comes not from Xenil,  
From Guadalarif of the plain, or Barves of the hill ;  
But where from out the forest burst Xarama's waters clear,  
Beneath the oak-trees was he nursed, this proud and stately steer.

## X.

Dark is his hide on either side, but the blood within doth boil,  
And the dun hide glows, as if on fire, as he paws to the turmoil.  
His eyes are jet, and they are set in crystal rings of snow ;  
But now they stare with one red glare of brass upon the foe.

## XI.

Upon the forehead of the bull the horns stand close and near,  
From out the broad and wrinkled skull, like daggers they appear ;  
His neck is massy, like the trunk of some old knotted tree,  
Whereon the monster's shagged mane, like billows curl'd, ye see.

## XII.

His legs are short, his hams are thick, his hoofs are black as night,  
Like a strong flail he holds his tail in fierceness of his might ;  
Like something molten out of iron, or hewn from forth the rock,  
Harpado of Xarama stands, to abide the Alcayd's shock.

## XIII.

Now stops the drum—close, close they come—thrice meet, and thrice  
give back ;  
The white foam of Harpado lies on the charger's breast of black—  
The white foam of the charger on Harpado's front of dun—  
Once more advance upon his lance—once more, thou fearless one !

## XIV.

Once more, once more,—in dust and gore to ruin must thou reel—  
In vain, in vain thou tearest the sand with furious heel—  
In vain, in vain, thou noble beast, I see, I see thee stagger,  
Now keen and cold thy neck must hold the stern Alcayd's dagger !

## XV.

They have slipp'd a noose around his feet, six horses are brought in,  
And away they drag Harpado with a loud and joyful din.  
Now stoop thee, lady, from thy stand, and the ring of price bestow  
Upon Ganzul of Agalva, that hath laid Harpado low.

## Note XXXII. p. 194.

*I will disown my name.*—In the original, “by the bones of  
my father.”

“ Giuro a te per l'osse de Pipino.”

MORG. MAGG. Canto 25.

## Note XXXIII. p. 200.

*The news was confirmed of his being slain in a battle be-  
tween Monsieur de Lautrec, and that great general Gonsalvo  
de Cordova, in the kingdom of Naples.*—The Mareschal de

Lautrec, (known, until the death of his father, by the name of M. de Barbasan,) was one of the bravest, and withal most unfortunate, soldiers of the 16th century. His extraction was of the most illustrious ; his father being the second son of that Jean Comte de Foix, who married Marguerite d'Albret. Lautrec was thus cousin-german to Jean de Foix, Viscount of Narbonne, who married Mary of Orleans, sister of Louis XII., and was by her father of Gaston de Foix, Duke of Nemours. He stood in the same relation to Francis Phœbus de Foix, who, in right of his mother, was King of Navarre, and who died childless ; and to his sister, Catherine de Foix, who, after his brother's death, carried the crown of Navarre to her husband, Henry d'Albret,—father of Jeanne d'Albret,—mother of Henry IV. The noble house of Lautrec became extinct in the age succeeding that of the Mareschal ; his own sons had no children : his brothers, almost as celebrated as himself, both died unmarried ; and his sister, the famous Countess de Chateaubriant, the mistress of Francis I., never had any family. Mariana says of Lautrec, that “ such was his obstinacy and pride, he would rather at any time follow the worst plan of his own devising, than the best suggested by any other person ;” he adds, “ that some one said something of this sort one day to Lautrec himself, who made answer, ‘ What was the character of Lucullus ? ’ ” He was, in general, as I have said, unfortunate, in spite of distinguished talents, and most romantic valour ; yet, in 1527, he was lucky enough to take, in a few days, Pavia, which Francis I. had vainly besieged during many months, a few years before. Francis was said to have been a little jealous of this success ; but, if it were so, his jealousy must have been drowned in far different feelings, by the sad termination of Lautrec's career before Naples, in the year 1528. It has been asserted, nevertheless, that the king bore this calamity more lightly than might have been expected, and said, “ What could I expect of an expedition in which Lautrec commanded against Gonsalvo de Cordova ? ” The malicious Brantome tells this story, and adds, by way of comment, “ Francis twice entrusted his armies to the guidance of

Lautrec, but then he was the lover of the Countess de Chateaubriant, his sister. At the time when the Mareschal was killed before Naples, Madame de Chateaubriant had ceased to interest him so deeply.”—Lautrec had two brothers, who were with him in most of his campaigns, and who were both like him brave, and like him unfortunate. The one, M. de l'Esparre, received, in a skirmish, so many blows on his helmet from a mace, that he immediately lost his sight, and died soon after. The other, the Mareschal de Foix, was at first a churchman, and had very near risen to be a cardinal, through his sister's influence ; but he could not resist the natural passion of his family :—he renounced, one fine morning, his title of *proto-notary*, and joined his brother just as he had got on horseback, at the head of his troops. The battle of Pavia was fought in direct opposition to his advice, and he received his mortal wound there. Next day, one of the Spanish generals went to see him in his tent, and found him, says Brantome, “*peasant et jurant en Gascon contre l'Amiral de Bonnivet.*” He said, the admiral had occasioned the battle, and consequently his wound, and that his chief reason for desiring to recover, was, that he might have the pleasure of killing him. It was in such holy mood that the ex-protonotarius de Foix died. Brantome says, that he had seen the monument of the Marshal de Lautrec in the Church of Santa Maria la Nueva, at Naples ; and its Latin inscription ran thus :

“ To the Memory of Odet de Foix, Lord of Lautrec, and Marshal of France, Gonsalvo Ferdinand de Cordova, Duke of Seass, Viceroy of Naples, grandson of the great Gonsalvo, (having learned that the Remains of an illustrious Enemy of his House were interred obscurely in this Chapel,) has erected this Monument, a proper source of reflections on the Misfortunes of Humanity, and the Mutability of Fortune.”

#### Note XXXIV. p. 200.

*A great battle in the kingdom of Naples.*—The conquest of Naples, then the great object of Spanish ambition, having at last been attained, after a mighty expenditure of blood and

treasure, Ferdinand the Catholic repaired to Italy, and was received by Gonsalvo with such splendour, that the description of processions, feasts, &c., fills many long pages in *Mariána*. There is, however, a very short and simple Spanish ballad, which may well deserve to be translated, on account of the contrast it presents to the triumphant and pompous language of the Jesuitical historian.

## NAPLES.

## I.

One day, the King of Arragon, from the old citadel  
Look'd down upon the sea of Spain, as the billows rose and fell ;  
He look'd on ship and galley, some coming and some going,  
With all their prize of merchandize, and all their streamers flowing.

## II.

Some to Castille were sailing, and some to Barbary—  
And then he look'd on Naples, that great city of the sea :  
O city ! saith the king, how great hath been thy cost,  
For thee I twenty years, my fairest years, have lost !

## III.

By thee I have lost a brother ;—never Hector was more brave ;  
High cavaliers have dropp'd their tears upon my brother's grave :—  
Much treasure hast thou cost me, and a little boy beside,  
(Alas ! thou woeeful city !) for whom I would have died.

## Note XXXV. p. 233.

*In the mountains of Leon my family had its original.*—It has been very often supposed that the story told by this captive, is, in truth, that of Cervantes himself. There is, however, no sort of foundation for this. The captive is a Leonese, Cervantes was a Castilian. The former was made prisoner the day of the battle of Lepanto, in 1571—Cervantes' own captivity did not occur till the 20th of September, 1575. The only circumstances in which the imaginary and the true history coincide, are those of the confinement in the Bagno of Hassan Aga, and (so far as that goes) of an attempt having really been made by Cervantes, in a manner somewhat simi-

lar to that described as crowned with success in the case of Viedma.

Note XXXVI. p. 237.

*The great Duke of Alva was passing into Flanders.*—Ferdinand de Toledo, third Duke of Alva, first distinguished himself at the battle of Pavia, being then under twenty years of age. Charles V. was, from the beginning, sensible of his great merits ; for, says Brantome, he came with him to France, when he was on his way to chastise those of Ghent, in 1549, on which occasion, in presenting him to a great lady of the French court, he used these expressions : “ Madame voila le Duc d’Albe que j’aime beaucoup : il est d’une noble et valeureuse race : (la Maison de Toledo :) il est encore jeune mais il sera un jour bon homme de guerre : je l’avançerai suivant ses merites. Je voudrai bien qu’il fut un peu moins froid et réservé ; mais tel est le caractere de nos Espagnols. Vos François sont plus vifs et effrontés : par exemple Peloux—(this was a Frenchman, who had gone over to the emperor with the Duke de Bourbon, and become very useful to Charles V., in many mean enough capacités,)—Peloux va et vient sans cesse et veut entrer partout. Je voudrai que le Duc d’Albe fut un peu de ce caractere.” It was only in the presence of Charles V., however, that Alva’s modesty was remarkable ; he was the proudest, as well as the vainest of men,—harsh and cruel ;—but withal brave as a lion, and a most skilful general. In 1567, Philip sent him as governor to the Low Countries, and it was at this time that our captive Viedma is represented to have joined him. He ruled these countries, for twelve years, with a rod of iron ; the first step he took was to arrest and behead the Counts of Egmont and Horn, who had revolted against Philip, or rather against Margaret of Austria, his sister, who preceded Alva in the government of the Low Countries. A captain, named Salines, was sent to arrest Egmont.—“ What *me* ?” said the Count, sternly, “ *me* ? captain—take from me this sword that has so well served the king ! ” But immediately softening his tone, he added—“ since the king wishes to take it, here it is, captain.”—

(There is a fine tragedy on Egmont's story, by Goethe.)—The Prince of Orange Nassau, however, escaped, and carried on a bloody war with Alva, the result of which was, in effect, the freedom of the United Provinces. Philip, ever jealous, recalled Alva after a time, and on some ridiculous pretext, banished him to his country seat, which he did not leave till his services were called for in Portugal, of which kingdom he completed the conquest for his tyrannical sovereign. He was as cruel in Portugal, as he had been in the Netherlands, and died there in 1582, in the 74th year of his age. It was Alva that first placed musketeers among the pikemen, of which the infantry then consisted; and, at first, this novelty produced an astonishing effect:—every one fled when Alva's stern voice gave the word, “ Salgan, Salgan los Mosqueteros! ”—He was distinguished by the highest excellence in every warlike exercise; insomuch, that when the French and Spanish courts met at Bayonne, in 1565, not even the famous Constable Anne de Montmorenci ventured to joust with him.

#### Note XXXVII. p. 237.

*Diego de Urbina*.—It was he who took the royal standard of Egypt, at the battle of Lepanto.

#### Note XXXVIII. p. 237.

*Don Juan of Austria*.—This distinguished soldier was the natural son of Charles V.; but, (unlike most natural sons,) it is more easy to say who was his father than who was his mother. One Barbara Plomberg, a German peasant girl, had the honour or disgrace of being commonly talked of as having given birth to Don Juan; but there were not wanting abundance of people, who said he owed his being to the secret amours of Charles V. and a princess too near to his blood. Don Juan served his first campaign in 1570, in the kingdom of Grenada, where the Moors had made a revolt. His valour was so distinguished, that the first battle he was in, those who saw him fight were continually calling out, *Es verdadero hijo del Emperador!* (*he is the true son of the Emperor.*) It was he who carried into effect the designs of Philip II., in re-

gard to the Moors, and who finally expelled them from the soil of Spain. The year after this was accomplished, he was sent with a large naval armament, principally Spanish, against the Turks. A considerable number of vessels, belonging to other Christian nations, having ranged themselves beneath his flag, he attacked the Ottoman fleet off Lepanto. The fleet of the Turks was composed of two hundred and forty-four galleys ; that of Don Juan consisted of two hundred and eight galleys, six galleasses, twenty-two great vessels, and forty frigates, in which were embarked eight thousand Spanish veterans, twelve thousand Italians, and about six thousand besides of German and other volunteers. The galleys and other vessels of Malta, made part of Don Juan's armament, and they were commanded by the two knights, D'Andraedo and de Romegas ; while Antonio Colonna headed another formidable division, under the banners of the Papal See. Don Juan held a council of war, as to the propriety of attacking or acting on the defensive. Every body was at first for the latter plan, excepting only Romegas and himself ; but the rest were compelled to give in, and the result was the grandest triumph with which Christian arms had ever at that time been blest in combatting the naval forces of the Ottoman. The Capitan Pacha was killed, and his head, exhibited on the end of a pike, inspired such terror, that no Turkish vessel durst any longer abide the attack. The Christians lost, indeed, 10,000 men, and among the rest, Justiniano Barbarigo, the illustrious general of the Venetians ; but they took no less than a hundred and thirty gallies, killed 12,000 of the Turks, took 10,000 of them prisoners, and set at liberty 15,000 Christian captives, who had worked (in fetters) the oars of the Turkish fleet. Charles IX. celebrated this victory by a *Te Deum*, in every church in France. Pius V. made Antonio Colonna ride in his chariot to the Capitol, after the fashion of the old Roman triumph ; but the true glory of the day rested with Don Juan of Austria, who was ever after considered as the first general of his time. His own wish, it is said, was to sail right for Constantinople immediately from Lepanto ;

but this was over-ruled by his council of war. The coast of Africa became, therefore, the scene of hostilities; he reduced Tunis to submission, and established there a king, who, although a Mahometan, undertook to pay regular tribute to the crown of Spain. After these brilliant services, he repaired to the court of his brother Philip, who shortly appointed him governor of the Low Countries. He went thither in 1576, and took France in his way, but preserved in that part of his journey the strictest possible incognito. He staid but one day in Paris, and spent the whole of it in walking about the streets and ramparts. In the evening they told him there was to be a great ball at the Louvre, and he determined to go thither in disguise, which he did accordingly, and was present through the whole of the entertainment, without being recognised by a single person there, not even by the Spanish ambassador. "On this occasion," says Brantome, "he was above all things ravished with the beauty and the fair grace of Marguerite de Valois," (wife of Henry IV., and then Queen of Navarre.) Next morning he continued his journey to Flanders, where, during the space of two years, he maintained and increased, by the practice of every civil and military virtue, the reputation he brought with him from Lepanto and Barbary. He took many towns, and won many battles, the last of these being the great and decisive one which took place on the plain of Gembloux, in the spring of 1578. Don Juan of Austria died in the end of the same year, at the age of thirty-two; and the suddenness of his death gave rise to many dark suspicions among those who were well acquainted both with him and his brother. His physicians gave out that he died of an epidemic disorder, which he was supposed to have caught from his mistress, the Countess D'Havray. But the more prevalent belief was that Don Juan had been poisoned, and not a few accused King Philip of having caused him to be taken off, at the instigation of his perfidious favourite and minister, Antonio Peres. The story they told, with whatever truth, is as follows: Don Juan had a secretary of the name of Eseovedo, who had formerly been in the service of Don Ruy Gomez, minister of Philip II., and

husband of the beautiful and frail lady, who, after his death, became too celebrated under the name of Princess D'Eboli. This lady was the mistress of Philip, but she also carried on an intrigue with Antonio Perez, which being discovered by Escovedo, that gentleman very imprudently reproached with her levities the widow of his ancient master. The Princess D'Eboli took the revenge of a true Spaniard. She had Escovedo assassinated, and being afraid that he might have breathed his suspicions to Don Juan, she contrived to inspire some jealousy of this great general into the breast of the king, his brother; who at last consented to have him poisoned in secret. Such is the story. Don Juan of Austria was succeeded in the government of the Low Countries, by the celebrated Prince of Parma.

## Note XXXIX. p. 238.

*Véhalí, King of Algiers, &c.*—“ Embistió el Oktali a esta capitana con siete galeras suyas, y no pudo ser socorrida de las nuestras por haberse salido adelante de la ardianza o prueto dellas per señalarse aquel dia: de los tres caballeros heridos el uno era Frey Pedro Justiniano Prior de Mecina y general de Malta, el otro un Español, y el otro un Siciliano: à estos hallaron vivos enterrados entre los muchos muertos.”—*Arroyo: Relacion de la Santa Liga*, p. 67.

## Note XL. p. 239.

*I took notice of the Christians' fault in letting slip the Turkish fleet.*—Arroyo says, that Don Juan of Austria bade the pilots steer for Navarino, on the night of the 16th September, 1572, but that they, from unskilfulness of the coast, made for an island called Prodano, some three leagues off that harbour, by means of which blunder the Algerine had time to draw out all his vessels, and place them under protection of the batteries of Modon.—*Ibid.* p. 90.

## Note XLI. p. 239.

*The admiral galley of Naples, commanded by the Marquis of Santa Cruz.*—See Herrera, cap. 26.

## Note XLII. p. 239.

*Barbarossa*.—Haradin, surnamed Barbarossa, was the most famous corsair of those days. He became tyrant of Algiers in 1534.

## Note XLIII. p. 240.

*Muley Hamida*, one of the cruellest Turks in the world.—Muley Hamida, and Muley Hamet, or Mahomet, were the two sons of Muley Hacan, King of Tunis. Muley Hamida, the elder, burnt out his father's eyes with hot iron, and took possession of his throne. The younger brother fled from the cruelty of the elder, and retired into Sicily. The Turks had driven Hamida from Tunis, but he had fortified himself in Goleta, and was in hopes soon to recover his empire, at the time when Don Juan of Austria landed in Barbary. The Turks were expelled in their turn from Tunis; the exiled Muley Hamet was brought from Sicily, and established as King of Tunis, tributary to Philip II. of Spain. The atrocious Hamida was given up to Don Carlos of Arragon, Viceroy of Sicily, who conducted him to Naples, where one of his sons who accompanied him underwent a very sudden and prudent conversion from the errors of Mahometanism. He was baptized by the name of Don Carlos de Austria, his godfather and godmother being Don Juan of Austria himself, and Donna Violante de Moscoso. The father died of grief and rage on being informed of his son's apostacy.

## Note XLIV. p. 240.

*He attacked the Goletta, and the fort Don Juan had begun.*  
—See, for a fuller account of all these transactions, Watson's History of Philip II. Vol. I. p. 283, &c.

## Note XLV. p. 243.

*Don Pedro de Aguilar*.—The Andalusian family of Aguilar had derived great honour from producing, in the preceding age, those two distinguished warriors, Gonsalvo and Alonzo de Aguilar. It was on the death of the latter that some Spa-

nish minstrel composed the famous ballad (so elegantly translated by Bishop Percy) of *Rio verde, Rio verde*.

Note XLVI. p. 247.

*Shut up in a bagnio, where they keep their Christian slaves.* —The following curious account of Christian slavery in Algiers is translated from the preliminary confession of a renegade, who was reconciled to the bosom of the church by the Spanish Inquisition in 1639. Pellicer, from whom I take it, had seen the *MS.* itself in the Royal Library at Madrid, (see Vol. IX. p. 17.)

"The Christians have four churches where they hear mass, and in my time there were twelve priests who said mass every day. In the greatest church, which is in the bagnio of the king, there were five priests, sent thither by his holiness. Every day a collection is made, and the captives give what they can for the buying of wax and ornaments, besides a real and a half to each priest, and another every time they partake of the eucharist. The Christians are very humble, particularly the priests, whom the boys always pursue in the streets with stones and other impurities. There are at this moment 200 Christian slaves in that city, who are treated most miserably, both men and women, receiving nothing more than a single loaf of bread every day—but especially, they are cruelly used by the Tagarinos, which are they that have been driven out of Spain. These make them labour without remission, being loaded with irons, and the strongest they carry with them to row in their galleys.

"The women of the Moors never enter into their mosques, from the towers of which, at noontide, there is a banner displayed, and voices are heard from one to another calling to prayer. Their worship is silent, and of gesticulation, there being little said, but an infinity of prostrations and uprisings. They eat off cakes of bread laid on the ground, without any service of covers. Their women wear trowsers down to the feet, which is by no means a lascivious dress, although they themselves are so more than can be imagined . . . . The

boys in their schools write with reeds on the sand, rubbing it smooth from time to time, so that it serves for a long while. The merchants do the same, keeping their accounts very accurately . . . . In law-suits they expend little, by reason of their speedy decisions ; hence the abundance of wealth among the Moors."

One of Cervantes most agreeable comedies is entitled, " Los Baños de Argel ;" and in it very nearly the same characters and adventures are described as occur here in the story of the Captain de Viedma. The converted Moorish girl, the renegade, &c., play exactly the same parts.

Note XLVII. p. 247.

Azanaga.—Hassen Aga's story is told exactly as here in Haedo's *Historia de Argel*, p. 89.

Note XLVIII. p. 248.

*His name was Soasedra.*—Vis. Cervantes himself, (see (Life.)

Note XLIX. p. 253.

*She taught me in my own tongue the Christian worship, and told me a great many things of Lela Maricn.*—Lela is, in Arabic, equivalent to *Our Lady*. There is a great deal said concerning the Virgin Mary in the Koran, so that Zorayda might have known about her even before the old slave instructed her. Cervantes might almost be suspected of satire in representing the name of the Virgin as the part of the old slave's lessons which had made the deepest impression on the young lady's mind ; but his Spanish commentators are all very valiant in defending his catholicism from the slightest imputation.

Note LX. p. 281.

*Being got on land, we all kissed it for joy, and thanked God with tears for our deliverance.*—There is in Depping's collection a Spanish ballad, which I shall translate, on account of

the resemblance which, in several particulars, it bears to the story of these Christian captives. The idea of the gardener's disguise occurs so often in the stories of escapes from Barbary, that I take it for granted there had been some real story on which its adoption was founded.

## DRAGUT.

## I.

O swiftly, very swiftly, they up the straits have gone,  
O swiftly flies the corsair, and swift the cross comes on,  
The cross upon yon banner, that streams to the breeze,  
It is the sign of victory, the cross of the Malteze.

## II.

"Row, row, my slaves," quoth Dragut, "the knights, the knights  
are near,  
Row, row, my slaves, row swiftly, the star-light is too clear,  
The stars they are too bright, and he that means us well,  
He harms us when he trims his light—yon Moorish centinel."

## III.

There came a wreath of smoke from out a culverine,  
The corsair's poop it broke, and it sunk in the brine ;  
Stout Dragut swims ashore, but many a one goes down ;  
Down goes the fetter'd Christian with the servant of Mahoun.

## IV.

But one of Dragut's captives, a happy man is he,  
The Christian sailors see him struggling in the sea,  
They hear the captive praying in the Christian tongue,  
And a rope from their galley they down to him have flung.

## V.

It was a Spanish knight, who had long been in Algiers,  
From ladies high descended, and noble cavaliers,  
But forced, for a season, a false Moor's slave to be,  
Upon the shore his gardener, and his galley-slave on the sea.

## VI.

But now his heart is dancing, he sees the Spanish land,  
And all his friends advancing to meet him on the strand.—  
His heart was full of gladness, but his eyes they ran o'er,  
For he wept as he stepp'd upon the Christian shore.

END OF VOLUME SECOND.

---

EDINBURGH :  
Printed by James Ballantyne and Co.





Digitized by Google

